

THE Country-mans Recreation, or the Art of Planting, Graffing, and Gardening, in three Bookes.

The first declaring divers wayes of Planting, and
Graffing, and the best times of the Yeare, with divers Com-
modities and secrets herein, how to Set or Plant with the Roote and
without the Roote, how to sow or set Pepins or Curnels with the
ordering thereof, also how to cleanse your Grafts and Cions, how
to helpe barren and sicke Trees, how to kill Wormes and Ver-
min and to preserve and keepe Fruit, how to plant and proyne your
Vines, and to gather and presse your Grape, how to cleanse and
Masse your Trees, how to make your Cider and Perry,
with many other secret Practises which shall
appeare in the Table following.

The second treateth of the Hop-Garden, with ne-
cessary Instructions for the making and the maintenance
thereof, as the Scituation, quantity, charge and benefit, prepara-
tion, time to cut and set, with Rules for the choice and
preparation of Rootes, and also divers Instruments
usefull for the Hop-Garden.

Whereunto is added,

The Expert Gardener, containing divers necessa-
ry and rare Secrets belonging to that Art, with Directions
to know the time and season to sow and plant all manner of
Seeds; with divers new Inventions and Garden-knots,
and also present Remedies to destroy Snailles, Can-
ker-wormes, Moths, Garden-fleas, Earth-
wormes, Moles, and all other Vermin
which commonly breed in
Gardens.

LONDON.

Printed by B. A L L S O P and T. F A V V C E T for MICHAEL
YOUNG, and are to be sold at his Shop in Bedford-street in
Coven-garden neere the New Exchange.

1640.

1
E
y
E
o
S
g
b
C
re
b
C
d
a
a
a
th
ri
ca

th



An Exhortation to the Planter and Graffer.

Regard alwayes before ye doe intend to plant or graffe, it shall be meete to have good experience in things meet for this Art, as in knowing the natures of all fruites and the differences of Climates, which be contrary in every Land: also to understand the East and West winds, with Aspects and Starres, to the end ye may begin nothing that the Wind or Raine may oppresse, that your labour be not lost, and to marke also and consider the dispositions of the Elements that present yeare, for all yeares be not of like operation, nor yer after one sort; the Summer and Winter doe not beare one face on the Earth, nor the Spring-time alwayes raine, or Autumne alwayes moiste: of this none have understanding, without a good and lively marking Spirit, few or none without learning may discern of the varieties and qualities of the earth, and what he doth aske or refuse. Therefore it shall be good to have understanding of the Ground where ye doe plant either Orchard or Garden with fruit, first it behoveth to make a sure Defence, to the end that not onely rude Persons and Children may be kept out, but all kind of hurtfull Cattle endamaging your Plants or Trees, as Oxen, Kine, Calves, Horses, Hogs, and Sheepe, as the rubbing of sheepe doth greatly burne the sap, and often doth kill young Trees and Plants, and where they are broken or bruised with Cattell, it is doubtfull to grow after. It shall be good also to Set, Plant, or Graffe Trees all of like nature and strength together, that the great and high trees may not overcome the low and weake, for when they be not like of height, they grow not ripe nor your fruit so well at one time, but the one before the other. That earth which is good for Vines, is good also for other fruit.

Ye must dig your holes a yeare before ye Plant, that the earth may bee the better seasoned, mortified and waxe tender, both by Raine in Winter,

To the Planters.

and heate in Summer, that thereby your Plants may take root the sooner, if ye will make your holes and plant both in a yeare: at the least ye ought to make your holes two moneths before ye plant, and as soone as they be made, then it shall be good to burn straw or such like therein, to make the ground warme. The further ye make them asunder, the better your trees shall beare. Make your holes like unto a furnace, that is, more straight in the mouth then beneath, whereby the rootes may have the more roome, and by straightnesse of the mouth, the lesse raine cold shall enter by in Winter, and so lesse heate to the roote in Summer.

Looke also that the earth ye put to the rootes, be neither wet nor laid in water: they doe commonly leave a good space betwixt every tree, for the hanging boughes, for being nigh together, ye cannot set rootes, nor sow nothing so well under your trees, nor they will not beare fruit so well. Some loveth forty foote, some thirty betweene every tree: your Plants ought to be greater then the handle of a shovell, and the lesse the better. See they be straight without knots or knobs, having a long straight grain or barke, which shall the sooner be apt to take Graffes, and when ye see branches or boughes of old trees, choose the straightest branch thereof, and those trees which have borne yearely good fruit before, take of those which be on the Sunny-side, sooner than those that grow in the cover or shadow, and when ye take up or alter your Plants, ye shall note to what your plant is subject, and so let them be set againe, but those which have growne in dry Grounds, let them be set in moist Grounds, your Plants ought to be cut of three foot long. If ye will set two or three Plants together in a hole, ye must take heed the roote of one touch not another, for then the one will perishe and rot the other, or dye by Wormes of other Vermin, and when you have placed your Plants in the earth, it shall be good to strike downe to the bottome of every hole, two short stakes as great as your arme, on either side your hole one, and let them appeare but a little above the earth that ye may thereby in Summer give water unto the rootes if need be. Your young Plants and rooted Trees are commonly set in Autumne, from the first unto the fifteenth of *October*, yet some opinion is, better after *Alhallontide* untill *Christmas*, then in the Spring, because the earth will dye too soone after, and also to set Plants without root after *Michaelmasse*, that they may be the better mollified and gather roote against the Spring, whereof ye shall find heereafter more at large. Thus much have I thought meete to declare unto the Planters, Graffers, and Gardeners, whereby they may the better avoyd the occasions and dangers of Planting, Graffing, and Gardening, which may come often times through ignorance.



A Table of all the principall things *contained in this Booke.*

Of the seaven Chapters following.

CHAP. I.

*Treateth of the setting of Curnels, of Apple-trees,
Plum-trees, Peare-trees, and Service-
trees.*

How to choose your Pepins at the first pressing.
Meanes to use the Earth to sow your Pepins on.
Seeing unto the Poultry for marring your beds,
and how to weed or cleanse your beds or quar-
ters.
Wilde Cions how to plucke them up.

CHAP. II.

*Treateth how to set your wilde Trees which come
of Pepins, when they be first pluckt up.*

Vild trees that come of Pepins how to dung them.
Principall Roots how to cut them in setting againe.
Young trees, how to set them in a ranke.

The Table.

Spaces from one ranke to another, and how to make them.
Plants being dry, how to water them.
Removing your trees, how to plant them againe.
Removing, how to know the fittest time for it.
Negligence and forgetfulnesse, and the hurt of it.
Not so good to graffe the Service-tree, as to set him.
Some trees without Graffing have good fruit, and other being
grafted, have but evill fruit.
For to augment and multiply your trees.
The manner to change the fruit of the Pepin-tree.
How to make good Cyder.
To make an Orchard in few yeares.

CHAP. III.

Is of the setting of Trees which come of Nuts.

HOW to set trees that doe come of Nuts, and the time to
plant or set them.
To set them in the Spring.
Dunging and deep digging thereof.
Stones and Nuts like the trees they come of.
Planting the said Nuts.
Why fruit shall not have so good favour.
To set the Pine-tree.
To set Cherry-trees.
Trees of bastard or wilde Nuts.
To set Filberds and Hasell wands.
To set Damsons and Plum-trees.
To graffe Cions of Plums on the like.
To set all sorts of Cherry trees.
How to order Plum-trees and Cherry trees.
How to graffe Plum-trees and Cherry-trees.
How to proyne or cut trees.
How to cleanse and dresse the rootes of trees.
To keepe the stocke being greater then the graffes.

The

The Table.

The remedy when a bough is broken.
How to enlarge the hole about the rootes.
To set small staves to stay your Cions.
What tree to proyne.
Why the lower Cherry dureth not so long as the great
Helme Cherry.
To graffe one great Cherry with another.
Of deepe setting or shallow.

CHAP. IV.

*Sheweth how to set other Trees of great Cions prickt in the
earth without Rootes, with the proyning of
lesser Cions.*

B Ranches being prickt giving rootes to trees.
How to set them.
How to bind them that be weake.
How to digge the Earth to set them in.
Cions without rootes.
Planting of the Fig tree.
Setting of Quinces.
Setting of Mulberry-trees.
Cutting-time for Cions.
Setting Bush-trees, as Gooseberries and small Reisons.
A Note thereof.

CHAP. V.

Treateth of foure manner of Graffings.

D Ivers wayes of Graffing.
Graffing of all sorts of trees.

Graf-

The Table.

Grafting of Apple trees, Peare-trees, Quince-trees, and Med-
lar-trees.

Grafting of great Cherries.

Grafting Medlars on other Medlars.

Divers kinds of Graftes on one tree.

Grafting of the Fig-tree.

Grafting the great Abricockes.

Grafting the Service-tree.

Setting the Service-tree.

Trees hard to graffe in the Shield,

How to see to Trees charged with fruit.

Choosing of trees to choose your Cions in

Cions on the *East* part are best.

Choosing of your tree for Graftes.

To keepe Graftes a long time,

To keepe Graftes ere they bud.

How you ought to begin to graffe.

When is good Grafting the wilde Stockes.

To marke if the tree be forward or not.

When ye Graffe, what to be furnished withall.

Of Graftes not prospering the first yeare.

For to Graffe well and sure.

How to trim your Graftes.

How to cut Graftes for Cherries and Plums.

A Note of your incision.

To be heedfull in Grafting least you raise the barke.

How to cut your Stocke.

If your wilde stocke be great or slender,

Trees as great as a mans Arme.

Great trees as big as ones Leg.

The Graftes being pinched in the Stockes.

How you ought to cleave your Stockes.

To graffe the branches of great trees.

How to cut great old branches.

How to bind your Graftes against winds.

To set many Graftes in one cleft.

The Table.

To saw your stocke before ye leave him.
If the stocke cleave too much, or the barke open.
How Graffes never lightly take.
How to set Graffes right in the stocke.
Setting in of the Graffes.
A note of the same.
How to draw forth the wedge.
How to cover your chifts on the head.
How ye ought to see well to the close binding up of your
Graffes.
How ye ought to temper your clay.
How to bulke your Graffe-heads.
The second stay to Graffe high Branches.
The third manner of Graffing, is betwixt the barke and the
Tree.
Dressing the head, to place your Graffes betwixt the barke and
the Tree.
Covering the head of your stocke.
The manner of graffing in the Shield.
To graffe in Summer, so long as the Trees be leaved.
Big Cions are best to graffe.
Manner to take of the Shield.
If your Scutchion or Shield be good or bad, how to know it.
Graffing on young Trees.
Setting or placing your Shield.
A Note on the same.
Raising up the barke to set the Shield on.
Binding on your Shield.
A Tree will beare the graffing of two or three Shields
Unbinding time for your Shield.
Cutting the Branches grafted on Trees.

The Table.

CHAP. VI.

Is of transplanting or altering the Trees.

Best to transplant or set them timely.
To plant or set towards the South.
Cutting the Branches before ye set.
Apple-trees commonly must be disbranched before ye
set them againe.
All wilde stockes must be disbranched.
What Trees doe love the Sunne, and what the cold ayre.
Many sorts and manners of Trees.
Planting or setting Trees at large.
Right ordering your Trees.
The best manner to enlarge the holes when you plant your
Trees.
Dung and good Earth for your Trees.
If Wormes be in the earth at your rootes of Trees.
Digging the Earth well about the rootes.
Nature of the places.
Goodness of the Earth.
With what ye ought to bind your Trees.

CHAP. VII.

*Is of Medicining and keeping the Trees, when they
are Planted and Set.*

First our counsell is, when your Trees are but Plants (in
dry weather) they must be watered.
With what Dung ye ought to dung your Trees.
When ye ought in Summer to uncover your Trees.
When to cut or pround your Trees.
Cutting off great Branches, and when.
Leaving great Branches cut.

Great

The Table.

Great Branches, and of the trees that beare them.
Barrennesse of trees, of cutting ill branches, and uncovering
the rootes.
Which Trees ye must breake or plucke up the rootes.
What doth make a good Nut.
Cattle eating and destroying trees, how to graft them again.
Wilde stockes ought not hastily to be removed.
When to cut naughty Cions from the head.
Sometime how to cut the principall members.
How to guide and governe the said Trees.
A kind of Sicknesse in Trees.
Wormes in the barks of trees.
Snailles, Antes, and Wormes that marre trees.
How to take those strange creeping Wormes.
Keeping Antes from the trees.
A Note of ill ayres and weathers.
Defence from the Caterpillar.

*Heere followeth the Table of Grafting strange
and subtile wayes, in using of fruites
and Trees.*

Grafting one Vine upon another.
To helpe a tree long without fruit.
To have Peaches two moneths afore others.
To have Damsons unto *Alballontide*.
To have Medlers, Cherries, and Peaches, in eating to tast like
spice.
How to make a Muscadell tast.
To have Apples and Peares to come without blossoming.
To have Apples and Chesnuts rath, and long on the trees
to remaine.
To have good Cherries unto *Alballontide*.
To have rath Medlers two moneths before others.

The Table.

To have Peares timely.
To have Misples and Medlars without stones.
How to have other Peares betimes.
Mulberries how to ripen them very soone, and dure long.
Keeping of Peares a yeare.
To have fruit tast halfe an Apple and halfe a Pear.
Grafting time.
Grafting the Quine-Apple.
Manner to destroy Pillinires or Ants about the Tree.
Another way of the same.
Nuts, Plums, and Almonds, how to have them greater and
fairer then others.
How to make an Oke or other Tree as Greene in Winter as
Summer.
Planting with Rootes, and without Rootes.
Keeping fruit from the Frost.
Choice dayes to Plant and Graft.
Greene Roses all the yeare.
Rellons or Grapes good a yeare long.
Laxative fruit from the tree, how to make it.
A Note for all Planters and Graffers.

*Here followeth a Table of certaine Dutch
practises.*

TO Graffe one Vine upon another.
Chosen dayes to graffe in, and to chooseth your Cions.
How to gather your Cions.
Of Wormes in the Trees or fruit.
The setting of stones, and the ordering thereof.
How to gather Gumme of any tree.
To set a whole Apple.
The setting of Almonds.
The watering of Pepins.
To Plant or set Vines.
To set or plant the Cherry tree.

To

The Table.

To keepe Cherries good a yeare.
Remedy against Pillmires or Ants.
The Setting of Chesnuts.
To make all stone fruit tast, as ye shall devise good.
The Graffing of the Medlar or Misphe.
The bearing of fruit of the Fig-tree.
The Planting of the Mulberry and Fig-tree.
The tree that beareth bitter fruit.
To helpe barren trees.
Another way for the same.
To keepe fruit after they be gathered.
The Mulberry-tree liking his earth.
Of Mousse on your trees,
To keepe Nuts long.
To cut or proyne the Peach-tree.
To colour Peach-stones.
If Peaches be troubled with Wormes,
Peaches without stones.
Another way for the same.
Which way to helpe trees that doe not prosper.
Graffing Apples to last on the tree till *Alhallowtide*.
Making Cherries and Peaches smell like spice.
Graffing an Apple-tree halfe sweet and halfe sower,
Graffing the Rose on the Holly-tree.
Keeping of Plums.
Altering of Peares.
Making of Cyder and Perry.
How to helpe frozen Apples.
How to make Apples fall from the tree.
Watring trees in Summer, if they waxe dry about the root.
How to cherish Apple-trees.
How to make an Apple grow in a Glasse.
How to graffe many sorts of Apples on one tree.
How to colour Apples of what colour ye list.
How to graffe and to have Apples without Core.
Setting of Vine Plants.

The Table.

How to proue or cut a Vine in Winter.
Grape and Vine how to order them.
How to have Grapes without stones.
Making a Vine to bring a Grape to tast like Claret.
Gathering of your Grapes.
How to know if your Grapes be ripe enough.
How to prove or tast Wine.
Setting, Planting, and ordering of Hops.
How to chuse your Hops.
How to sow the Seeds.
Setting your Poles.
How to proue the Hop.
How to gather your Hops.
What Poles are best for your purpose.
How to order and dresse your Hills.
Best Ground for your Hop.
A note of all the rest above-said.
Packing and keeping your Hops.

The Authors Conclusion of this Table.

TO God be praises on his
in all our Worldly Planting.
And let vs thanke the Remaines also,
for the Art of Graffing, and Gardening.

A Table



A Table for the Hop-Garden.

A Perfect Platforme of a Hop-Garden.
Of unapt and apt ground for Hops.

Of the Situation.

Of the quantity.

A proportion of the charge and benefit of a Hop-Garden.

Of the preparation of a Hop Garden.

The time to cut and set Hop Rootes.

Rules for the choice and preparation of Rootes.

Of the good Hoppe.

Of the unkindly Hoppe.

Of the wild Hoppe.

Of setting of Hop Rootes.

The distance of the Hills.

A description of the Line.

Abuses and Disorders in Setting.

Provision against annoyance, and spoyle of your Garden.

Of Poles.

Of the erection of Poles.

Of ramming of Poles.

Of Reparation of Poles.

Of pulling up Poles.

The way to make the Instrument wherewith to pull up the
Hop Poles.

The manner of pulling up the Hop Poles.

Of the preservation of Poles.

Of tying of Hops to the Poles.

OF

The Table.

Of hilling and hills.
Abuses in hilling.
Of the gathering of Hoppes.
What there is to be done in Winter herein.
When and where to lay Dung.
The order for reforming your Ground.
The order of cutting Hoppe Rootes.
Of divers mens follies.
Of Disorders and maintainers thereof.
Of an Oste.
Of the severall rooms for an Oste.
Of the Furnace or Keele.
Of the bed or upper floore of the Oste, whereon the Hoppes
must be dryed.
The orderly drying of Hops.
Other manners of Dryings not so good.
The very worst way of drying Hops.
Of not Drying.
Of the packing of Hops.
The Reformation of a Garden of wild Hops.
The Reformation of a disordered Garden.
Needlesse Curiosities used by the unskillfull.

The end of the Table.



THE

1

THE
COVNTY-MANS
Recreation, or the Art of Plan-
ting, Graffing, and Gardening:

CHAP. I.

*This Chapter treateth of the setting of Curnels, young
Plum-trees, and Peare-trees, of Damsons,
and Service-trees.*

FOR to make young trees of the Pepins of Apples,
Peares, Plums, and Service. First, yee must prepare
and make a great bed or quarter wel replenished,
blend or mixt with good fatte earth, and placed
well in the Sunne, and to be well laboured and digged a good
time before you doe occupie it: and if ye can by any meanes,
let it be digged very deepe the winter before, in blending or
mixing it well together with good fatte earth, or else to be
mixed almost the halfe with good dung: and so let it rot and
ripe together with the earth. And see alwayes that plot bee
cleane unto the pressing of Syder, that no wild Cions or
Plants doe spring or grow thereon. Then in the month of Sep-
tember, December or thereabouts, take of the Pepins, or
Pomes of the said fruit at the first pressing out of your licour,
before the Curnels be marred or brused: then take out of them
and rub a few at once in a cloth, and dry them betwixt your
hands, and take so many thereof as you shall thinke good:
then make your bed square, faire and plaine, and sow your

C

seedes

seedes thereon, then take and cover them with a rake lightly, or with earth, not putting too much upon them. This done, deuide your beds into quadrants or squares, of foure foote broad or thereabout, that when ye list ye may cleafe them from the one side to the other, without treading theron. Then shall ye cover your seedes, or Pepins with fine earth, so siting all over them, that then they may take the deeper and surer roote, and will keepe them the better in Winter following, and if ye list ye may rake them a little all over, so that ye raise not your Pepins about the earth.

Another way, how one may take the Pepins at the first coming of the licour or pressing.

VVhich is, ye shall choose the greatest and fairest Currnels or Pepins, and take them forth at the first bruising of your fruit, then dry them with a cloth, and keepe them all the winters vntill St. Andrewes tide: then a little after sow them in good earth, as thin as ye doe Peason, and then rake them over as the other.

How one ought to use his earth to sowe Pepins without dunging.

BVt in this manner of doing (in the Spring) it is not so great need for to raise or digge the earth so deep as that which is dunged in winter: but to deuide your quarters, in covering your Pepins not so much with earth, as those which be sowne with good dung, but when ye haue sowne them, a little rake all them over.

How ye ought to take heed of Poultriey for scraping of your beddes or quarters.

AS soone after as your Pepins be sowne vpon your beds or quarters, let this be done one way or other, that is, take good heed that your Hennes doe not scrape your beds or quarters: therefore sticke them all over light and thin with boughes, or thornes, and take good heed also to Swine, and other Cattell.

And

*How to weed or cleanse your Beds
and quarters.*

AN D when the winter is past and gone, and that yee see your Pepins rise and grow, so let them increase the space of one yeere, but see to cleanse weeds, or other things which may hurt them as you shall see cause. And in the Summer when it shall waxe dry, water them well in the evenings.

How one ought to pluck vp the wild Cions,

AN D when these wild Cions shall be great, as of the growth of one yeere, ye must then plucke them vp all in Winter following, before they doe begin to spring againe. Then shall yee set them and make of them a wild Orchard as followeth.

C H A P. II.

*Treateth how one shall set againe the small wild trees,
which come of Pepins, when they be first
pluckt up.*

FOR the Bastard or little wilde Trees incontinent assoone as they be pluckt up, ye must haue of other good earth well trimmed and dunged and to be well in the Sunne, and well prepared and drest, as it is sayd in the other part before of the Pepins.

*How to dung your Bastard or wild young
Trees which come of Pepins.*

ABout Advent before Christmas, ye must digge and dung well the place whereas ye will set them, and make your square of earth even & plaine, so large as ye shall think good, then set your wild trees so farre one from another as yee thinke meet to be graft, so that they may be set in even rankes and in good order, that when need shall require, ye may remove or renew any of them or any part thereof.

*How ye ought in replanting or setting to cut off in
the midst the principall great rootes.*

IN what part soever ye doe set any Trees, ye must cut off the great muster roote, within a foote of the stocke, and all other bigge rootes, so that ye leaue a foote long thereof, and so let them be set, and make your rankes crosse-wise one from another halfe a foote, or thereabouts, and ye must also see that there be of good dung more deepe and lower then ye doe set your Trees, to comfort the sayd rootes withall.

How you ought to set your Trees in ranke.

YE shall leaue betweene your ranckes, from one rancke to another, one foote, or thereabouts, so that yee may set them with good fat earth all over the rootes.

How to make the space from one ranke to another.

YE shall leave betweene your rankes, from one rancke to another, one foote, or thereabouts, so that ye may passe betweene every ranke for to cense them if need require, and also for to graffe any part or parcell thereof when time shall be meet. But ye must note, in making thus your rankes, ye shall make as many allies as rankes. And if ye thinke it not good to make as many allies, then deuide those into quarters of five foot broad, or thereabouts, and make and set foure rankes (in each quarter of the same) one foot from another as ye use to set great Cabbage, and alsoone after as ye have set them in rankes and in good order as is aforesaid, then shall ye cut off all the setts even by the ground. But in this doing, see that ye doe not plucke up or loose the earth what is about them: or if you will ye may cut them before ye doe set them in rankes. If ye doe so, see that ye set them in such good order, and even with the earth, as is aforesaid. And it shall suffice also to make your rankes as ye shall see cause. And looke that ye furnish the earth all over with good dung, without mingling of it in the earth, nor yet to cover the said Plants withall, but strowed betwixt; and yee must also looke well to the
clean-

cleansing of weedes, grasse, or other such things which will be a hurt to the growth of the Plants.

How to water Plants when they waxe dry.

IT shall be good to water them when the time is dry : in the first Yeare. Then when they have put forth of new Cions , leave no more growing but that Cion which is the principall and fairest, upon every stocke one : all the other cut off hard by the stocke , and ever as they doe grow small twigges about the stocke, ye shall (in the Moneth of *March* and *Aprill*) cut them all off hard by the stocke. And if ye then sticke by every Plant a pretty wand, and so bind them with Willow barke, Bryer, or Oliers, it shall profit them much in their groweth. Then after five or sixe yeares groweth, when they be so bigge as your finger, or there abouts, ye may then remove any of them whereas ye will haue them grow and remaine.

How one ought to remove Trees, and to plant them againe

THe manner how ye ought to remoue trees, is shewed in the sixt Chapter following: then about two or three yeares after their removing, ye shall graffe them, for then they will be the better rooted. As for the others which ye leaue still in rankes, ye may also graffe them where as they stand, as ye shall see cause good. When ye haue plucked vp the fairest to plant in either places (as is aforesayd) also the manner how to Graffe them, is shewd in the fift Chapter following. But after they shall be so graft, in what place soever it be, ye shall not remoue or set them in other places againe, vnill the Graffes be well closed vpon the head of the wild stocke.

When the best time is to replant, or remoue.

VVhen the head of the stocke shall be all over closed about the graffes, then ye may when ye will transplant and remoue them (at a due time) where they shall con-

tinue, For with often removing, ye shall doe them great hurt in their rootes, and be in danger to make them dye.

Of negligence and forgetfulnesse.

IF peradventure ye forget (through negligence) and haue let small Cions two or three yeares grow about the rootes of your stocks vnplucked vp, then if you haue so done, ye may well pluck them vp and set them in rankes, as the other of the Pepins. But ye must set the rankes more larger that they may be removed without hurting of each others rootes: and cut off all the small twiggges about as need shal require, though they be set or grafted. Order them also in all things as those small Cions of a yeeres growth.

*It is not so convenient to Graffe the
Service Tree, as to set*

VHereas ye shall see young Service Trees, it shall be most profit in setting them, for if ye doe graffe them, I beleeve ye shall winne nothing thereby.

The best is only to plucke up the young Bastard trees when they are as great as a good walking-staffe: then Proyne or cut off their branches and carry them to set whereas they may be no more removed: and they shall profit more in setting then grafting.

Some trees without grafting bring forth good fruit, and some other being grafted be better to make Syder of.

IT is here to be marked, that though the Pepins be sowne of the pomes of Pares and good Apples, yet ye shall find that some of them doe love the tree whereof they came: and those be right, which have also a smooth barke, and as faire as those which be grafted: the which if yee plant or set them thus growing from the maister root without grafting, they shall bring as good fruit, even like unto the Pepin whereof he first came. But there be other new sorts commonly good to eate, which be as good to make Syder of, as those which shall be grafted for that purpose.

When

When you list to augment and multiply your trees.

After this sort yee may multiply them, being of divers sorts and diversities, as of Peares, or Apples, or such like. Notwithstanding, whensoever ye shall finde a good Tree thus come of the Pepin as is aforesayd, so shall ye use him. But if ye will augment trees of themselves, ye must take Graffes and so graffe them.

Of the manner and changing of the fruit of the Pepin-tree.

Vhensoever ye doe replant or change your Pepin trees from place to place, in so removing often the stocke, the fruit thereof shall also change; but fruit which doth come of graffing, doth alwayes keepe the forme and nature of the tree whereof he is taken: for, as I have said, as often as the Pepin trees be removed to a better ground, the fruit thereof shall be so much amended.

How one ought to make good Syder.

Here is to be noted, if ye will make good Syder of what fruit soever it be, bearing Peares or Apples, but specially of good Apples, and wild fruit, have alwayes a regard unto the ryping thereof, so gathered dry, then put them in dry places, on boardes in heapes, covered with dry straw, and whensoever ye will make Syder thereof, choose out all those which are blacke brused, and rotten Apples, and throw them away, then take and use the rest for Syder: But here to give you understanding, doe not as they doe in the Country of *Mentz*, which do put their fruit gathered, into the middelt of their Garden, in the raine and mistings, upon the bare earth, which will make them to leese their force and vertue, and doth make them also withered and rough, and lightly a man shall never make good Syder that shall never come to any purpose or good profit thereof.

To make an Orchard in few Yeares.

Some doe take yong straight slippes which doe grow from the rootes, or of the sides of the Apple Trees, about *Mischelmasse*

chaelmasse, and doe so plant or set them (with Ores) in good ground, whereas they shall not be removed, and so graffe (being well rooted) thereon. Other some doe take and set them in the Spring time, after *Christmas*, in likewise, and doe graffe thereon when they be well rooted: and both doe spring well. And this manner of way is counted to have an Orchard the soonest. But these Trees will not endure past twenty or thirty yeeres.

CHAP. III.

Is of setting Trees of Nuttes.

How one ought to set Trees which come of Nuttes.

FOR to set trees which come of Nuttes: when ye have eaten the fruit, looke that ye keepe the Stones and Curnels thereof, then let them be dried in the wind, without the vehemency of the Sunne, to reserve them in a boxe and use them as before.

Of the time when yee ought to Plant or Set them.

YE shall plant or set them in the beginning of Winter, or afore *Michaelmasse*, whereby they may the sooner spring out of the earth. But this manner of setting is dangerous: for the Winter then comming in, and they being young and tender in comming vp, the cold will kill them. Therefore it shall be best to stay and reserve them till after winter. And then before ye doe set them, ye shall soke or steepe them in Milke, or in Milke and water, so long till they doe stincke therein: then shall yee dry them and set them in good earth, in the change or increase of the Moone, with the small end upward, foure fingers deepe, then put some sticke thereby to marke the place.

For to set them in the Spring time.

IF ye will plant or set your Nuttes in the Spring time, where yee will haue them still to remaine and not to be re-

reinooved, the best and most easie way is, to set in every such place (as ye thinke good) three or foure Nuttes nigh together, and when they doe all spring vp, leaue none standing but the fairest.

Of the Dunging and deepe digging thereof.

Also whereas ye shall thinke good, ye may plant or set all your Nuttes in one square or quarter together in good earth and dung, in such place and time as they vse to plant. But see that it be well dunged, and also digged good and deep and to be well medled with good dung throughout, then set your Nuttes three fingers deepe in the earth, and halfe a foot one from another : yee shall water them often in the Summer when there is dry weather, and see to weed them, and digge it as ye shall see need.

*Of Nuttes and Stones like to the
Trees they came of.*

IT is here to be noted, that certaine kind of Nuttes and Currnells which doe loue the Trees whereof the fruit is like vnto the Tree they came of, when they be planted in good ground, and set well in the Sunne, which be, the Walnuts, Chesnuts, all kind of Peaches, Figges, Almonds and Apricocksall these doe loue the Trees they came of.

*Of Planting the said Nuttes in good earth,
and in the Sunne.*

ALL the said Trees doe bring as good fruit of the said Nuttes, if they be well planted, and set in good earth, and well in the Sunne, as the fruit and Trees they first came of.

Why fruit shall not have so good savour.

FOr if ye plant good Nuttes, good Peaches, or Figs in a Garden full of shadow, the which hath afore loved the Sun, as the Vine doth, for lacke thereof their fruit shall not have so good savour, although it be all of one fruit: and likewise so it is with all other fruit and Trees, for the goodnesse of the
D earth,

earth, and the faire Sunne doth preserve them much.

For to set the Pine-trees.

FOR to set the Pine-tree, ye must set or plant them of Nuts, in *March*, or about the shoote of the sappe, not lightly after, ye must also set them where they may not be removed after, in holes well digged, and well Dunged, not to be transplanted or removed againe, for very hardly they will shoote forth Cions, being removed, specially if ye hurt the maister roote thereof.

For to set Cherry-trees.

FOR to set sowre Cherries which doe grow commonly in gardens, ye shall understand they may well grow of stones, but better it shall be to take off the small Cions which doe come from the great rootes: then plant them, and sooner shall they grow then the stones, and those Cions must be set when they are small, young and tender: as of two, or three yeares groweth, for when they are great, they profit not so well: and when ye set them, ye must see to cut off all the boughes.

Trees of bastard and wild Nuts.

THERE be other sorts of Nuttes, although they be well set in good ground, and also in the Sunne, yet will they not bring halfe so good fruit as the other, nor commonly like unto those Nuttes they came of, but to be a bastard wild sowre fruit, which is the Filberd, small Nuts, of Plums, of Cherries, and the great Apricocks: therefore if ye will have them good fruit, ye must set them in manner and forme following.

How to set Filberds or Hasell-trees.

FOR to set Filbirds or Hasels, and to have them good, take the small wands that grow out from the roote of the Filbird or Hasell-tree, (with short hary twigs) and set them, and they shall bring as good fruit as the Tree they came of: it shall not be needfull to proin, or cut off the branches thereof when ye set them, if they be not great, but those that ye doe

doe set, let them be but of two or three yeares growth, and if ye shall see those Cions which ye have planted, not to be faire and good, or doe grow and prosper not well, then in the Spring time, cut them off hard by the roote, that other small Cions may grow thereof.

To set Damsons or Plum-trees.

IN setting Damsons or Plum-trees, which fruit ye would have like to the Trees they came of: if the said Trees be not grafted before, ye shall take onely the Cions that grow from the roote of the old stocke, which groweth with small twigs, and plant or set them: and their fruit shall be like unto the Trees they were taken of.

To take Plum Graffes, and graffe them on other Plum-trees.

AND if your Plum-trees be grafted already, and have the like fruit that you desire, ye may take your graffes thereof, and Graffe them on your Plum-trees, and the fruit that shall come thereof, shall be as good as the fruit of the Cion, which is taken from the roote, because they are much of like effect.

To set all sorts of Cherries.

TO set all sorts of great Cherries, and others: ye must have the Graffes of the same Trees, and graffe them on other Cherrie trees, although they be of sowre fruit, and when they are so grafted, they will be as good as the fruit of the Tree whereof the graffe was taken: for the stones are good, but to set to make wild Cions, or Plants to graffe on.

The manner how one may order both Plum-trees, and Cherrie-trees.

FOR so much as these are two kind of Trees, that is, to underitand, the Cherry, and the Plum-tree, for when they be so grafted, their Rootes be not so good, nor so free as the Branches above, wherefore the Cions that doe

D 2

come

come from the rootes, shall not make so good and franke trees of. It is therefore to be vnderstood, how this manner and sort is to make franke trees, that may put forth good Cions in time to come, which is; when they be great and good, then if ye will take those Cions, or young springs from the rootes, ye may make good trees thereof, and then it shall not need to graffe them any more after : but to augment one by the other, as ye doe the Cions from the roote of the Nut, as is aforesaid, and ye shall doe as followeth.

How to graft Plum-trees and Cherry-trees.

YE may well graffe Plum-trees and great Cherry-trees, in such good order as ye list to haue them, and as hereafter shall be declared in the fifth Chapter following : for these would be graffed while they are yong and small, and also graft in the ground, for thereby one may dresse and trim them the better, and put but one graffe in each stock of the same. Cleave not the heart, but a little on the one side, nor yet deep, or long open.

How you must proine or cut your Trees.

FOR when your graffes be well taken on the stock, and that the graffes doe put forth faire and long, about one yeares growth, ye must proine, or cut the branch off commonly in Winter, (when they proine their Vines) a foote lower, to make them spread the better: then shall ye mingle all through with good fat earth, the which will draw the better to the place, which ye have so proined or cut.

The convenientest way to cleanse and proine, or dresse the rootes of Trees.

AND for the better cleansing and proining Trees beneath, is thus : ye shall take away all the weeds, and graft about the Rootes, then shall ye digge them so round about, as ye would seeme to plucke them up, and shall make them halfe bare, then shall ye enlarge the earth about the Rootes, and whereas ye shall see them grow faire and long, place or couch them

them in the said hole and earth againe : then shall ye put the cut end of the Tree where it is graft, somewhat more lower then his roots were, whereby his Cions so grafted, shall spring so much the better.

When the Stockes is greater then the Graffes.

VWhen as the tree waxeth, and swelleth greater beneath the Graffing, then above; then shall ye cleave the roots beneath and wreath them round, and so cover them againe: But seaye breake no root thereof, so will he come to perfection. But most men doe use this way: if the Stocke waxe greater then the Graffes, they doe slit downe the barke of the Graffes above, in two or three parts, or as they shall see cause thereof: and so likewise, if the Graffes waxe greater above then the stocke, ye shall slit downe the stock accordingly, with the edge of a sharpe knife. This may well be done at any time in *March, April, and May*, in the increase of the Moon, and not lightly after.

The Remedy when any Bough or Member of a Tree is broken.

If ye shall chance to have Boughes, or Members of Trees broken, the best remedy shall be, to place those Boughes or Members right soone againe, (then shall ye comfort the roots with good new earth) and bind fast those broken boughes or members, both above and beneath, and so let them remaine unto another yeare, untill they may close and put forth new Cions.

When a Member or Bough is broken how to proyne them.

VWhereas ye shall see under or above superfluous boughs, ye may cut or proyne off, (as ye shall see cause) all such boughes hard by the Tree, at a due time, in the winter following. But leave all the principall branches, and whereas any are broken, let them be cut off beneath, or else by the ground, and cast them away: thus must ye doe yeerely, or as ye shall

see cause, if ye will keepe your Trees well and faire.

*How one ought to enlarge the hole about the
Tree rootes.*

IN proyning your Trees, if there be many rootes, ye must enlarge them in the hole, and so to wreath them as it is a-foresaid, and to use them without breaking, then cover them againe with good fat earth, which ye shall mingle in the said hole, and it shall be best to be digged all over a little before, and see that no branch or roote be left uncovered, and when you have thus dressed your Trees, if any roote shall put forth, or spring hereafter out of the said holes, in growing, ye may so proine them as ye shall see cause, in letting them so remaine two or three yeares after, unto such time as the said Graffes be sprung up and well branched.

*How to set small Staves by, to strengthen
your Cions.*

TO avoid danger, ye shall set or sticke small staves about your Cions, for feare of breaking, and then after three or foure yeares, when they be well branched: ye may then set or plant them in good earth, (at the beginning of Winter) but see that ye cut off all their small branches hard by the stocke, then ye may plant them where ye thinke good, so as they may remaine.

In taking up Trees, note.

YE may well leave the maister roote in the hole (when ye digge him up) if the removed place be good for him, cut of the matter rootes by the stub, but pare not off all the small rootes, and so plant him, and he shall profite more thus, then others with all their maister rootes. When as Trees be great, they must be disbranched, or boughes cut off, before they be set againe, or else they will hardly prosper. If the Trees be great, having great branches or boughes, when ye shall digge them up, ye must disbranch them afore ye set them againe, for when Trees shall be thus proined, they shall bring great Cions

Cions from their Rootes, which shall be franke and good to replant, or set in other places, and shall have also good branches and rootes, so that after it shall not need to graffe them any more, but shall continue one after another to be free and good.

*How to couch the Rootes when they are
proyned.*

IN setting your Trees againe, if ye will dresse the rootes of such as ye have proined, or cut off the branches before, ye shall leave all such small rootes which grow on the great roote, and ye shall so place those rootes in replanting againe, not deepe in the earth so that they may soone grow, and put forth Cions: which being well used, ye may have fruit so good as the other afore-mentioned, being of three or foure yeares growth, as before is declared.

What Trees to proyne.

THIS way of proyning is more harder for the great Chery (called Healmier) then for the Plum-tree. Also it is very requisite and meet for those Cions or Trees, which be graft on the wild lowre Cherry-tree, to be proined also, for divers and sundry causes.

*Why the sower Chery dureth not so long as the
Healmier or great Cherry.*

THe wild and sower Cherry, of his owne nature will not so long time indure, (as the great Healmie Cherry) neither can have sufficient sappe to nourish the Graffes, as the great Healmie Chery is graft; therefore when ye have proined the branches beneath, and the rootes also, so that ye leave rootes sufficient to nourish the Tree, then set him.

If ye cut not off the under rootes, the Tree will profite more easier, and also lighter to be knowne, when they put forth Cions, from the roote of the same, the which ye may take hereafter.

To graffe one great Cherry upon another.

YE must have respect unto the Healse Cherrie, which is Graft on the wild Gomire (which is another kind of great Cherrie) and whether you doe proine them or not, it is not materiall: for they dure a long time. But ye must see to take away the Cions, that doe grow from the root of the wild Gomire, or wild Plum-tree: because they are of nature wild, and doe draw the sappe from the said Tree.

Of deepe Setting or shallow.

TO set your Stocks or Trees somewhat deeper on the high grounds, then in the Vallies, because the Sunne in Summer shall not dry the roote: and in the low ground more shallow, because the water in Winter shall not drowne or annoy the Rootes. Some doe marke the stocke in taking it up, and to set him againe the same way, because he will not alter his nature: so likewise the Graffes in Graffing.

CHAP. IV.

This Chapter doth shew how to set other Trees which come of wild Cions, pricked in the earth without rootes: and also of proining the meauer Cions.

Trees take roote prickt of Branches.

THERE be certaine which take roote, being pricked of Branches prointed of other Trees, which be, the Mulberrie, the Fig-Tree, the Quince-Tree, the Seruice-tree, the Pomgranad-tree, the Apple-tree, the Damson-tree, and diuers sorts of other Plumtrees, as the Plum-tree of Paradise, &c.

How one ought to set them.

FOR to set these sorts of Trees, ye must cut off the Cions, twigges, or boughes, betwixt *Alhallontide* and *Christmas*,

1.01

not lightly after. Ye shall choofe them which be as great as a little staffe or more, and looke whereas ye can find them, faire, smooth, and straight, and full of fapfe withall, growing of young trees, as of the age of three or foure yeares growth or thereabouts, and looke that ye take them so from the Tree with a broad Chizell, that ye breake not or loose any part of the barke thereof, more then halfe a foote beneath, neither of one side or other: then proine or cut off the branches, and pricke them one foote deepe in the earth, well digged and ordered before.

How to bind them that be Weake.

THose Plants which be slender, ye must proine or cut off the branches, then bind them to some stake or such like to be set in good earth, and well mingled with good dung, and also to be well and deeply digged, and to be set in a moyst place, or else to be well watred in Summer.

*How one ought to digge the Earth for to set
them in.*

AND when that ye would set them in the earth, ye must first prepare to digge it, and dung it well throughout a large foote deepe in the earth. And when as ye will set them every one in his place made (before) with a crow of Iron, and for to make them take roote the better, ye shall put with your Plants, watred Otes, or Barley, and so ye shall let them grow the space of three or foure yeares, or when they shall be well branched, then ye may remove them, and if ye breake off the old stubby roote and set them lower, they will last a long time the more. If some of those Plants doe chance to put forth Cions from the roote, and being so rooted, ye must plucke them up though they be tender, and set them in other places:

Of Cions without Rootes.

IF that the said Plants have Cions without any Rootes, but which come from the tree roote beneath, then cut them not

E

off

of till they be of two or three yeares growth, by that time they will gather rootes to be replanted in other places.

To Plant the Fig-tree.

THe said Plants taken of Fig-trees grafted, be the best. Ye may likewise take other sorts of Fig-trees, and graffe one upon the other, for like as upon the wild Trees doe come the Pepins, even so the Figge, but not so soone to prosper and grow.

How to set Quinces.

Likewise the nature of Quinces, is to spring, if they be pricked (as aforesaid) in the earth, but sometimes I have grafted with great difficulty, saith mine Author, upon a white Thorne, and it hath taken and borne fruit to looke on, faire, but in tast more weaker then the other.

The way to set Mulberries.

THere is also another way to set Mulberries as followeth, which is, if you doe cut in Winter certaine great Mulberry boughes or stockes asunder in the body (with a Saw) in troncheons a foote long or more, then ye shall make a great furrow in good earth well and deepe, so that ye may cover well again your Troncheons, in setting them an end halfe a foote one from another, then cover them againe, that the earth may be above those ends, three or foure fingers high, so let them remaine, and water them in Summer, if need be sometimes, and cleanse them from all hurtfull weeds and rootes.

Note one of the same.

THat then within a space of time after, the said tronchions will put forth Cions, the which when they be somewhat sprigged, having two or three small twigs, then ye may transplant or remove them whereye list, but leave your troncheons still in the earth, for they will put forth many motions, the which if they shall have scanty of roote, then dung your troncheons within with good earth, and likewise above also, and they shall doe well.

The

The time meet to cut Cions.

VNderstand also, that all trees the which commonly doe put forth Cions, if ye cut them in Winter, they will put forth and spring more abundantly, for then they be all good to Set and Plant.

To set Bush-trees, or Gooseberries, or small Raisons.

THere be many other kind of Bush-trees, which will grow of Cions pricked in the ground, as the Gooseberry-tree, the small Raison-tree, the Barberry-tree, the Blacke Thorne-tree, these with many others to be planted in Winter, will grow without rootes: ye must also proine them and they will take well enough, so likewise ye may pricke, in *March*, of Oziers in moyst grounds, and they will grow, and serve to many purposes for your Garden.

C H A P. V.

Treateth of foure manner of Graffings.

IT is to be understood that there be many wayes of Graffings, whereof I have here only put foure sorts, the which be good, both sure and well proved, and easie to doe, the which ye may use well in two parts of the yeare and more, for I have (saith he) grafted in our house, in every moneth, except *October* and *November*, and they have taken well, which I have (saith he) in the Winter begun to graffe, and in the Summer grafted in the Scutchine or shield according to the time, forward or slow; for certaine Trees, specially young faire Cions have enough or more of their sappe unto the middle of *August*, then other some had at *Midsummer* before.

The first way to graffe all sorts of Trees.

ANd first of all it is to be noted, that all sorts of francke Trees, as also wild Trees of nature, may be grafted

with grafts, and in the Scutchion, and both doe well take, but specially those Trees which be of like nature: therefore it is better so to graffe. Howbeit they may well grow and take of other sorts of trees, but certaine trees be not so good, nor will prosper so well in the end.

How to graffe Apple-trees, Peare-trees, Quince-trees, and Medlar-trees.

They graffe the Peare-graffe, on other Peare-stockes, and Apple, upon Apple stocke, Crab or Wilding stocke, the Quince and Medlar, upon the white Thorne, but most commonly they use to graft one Apple upon another; and both Peares and Quinces, they graft on Hawthorne and Crab-stocke. And other kind of fruit called in French *Saulfey*, they use to graft on the Willow stocke, the manner thereof is hard to doe, which I have not seene, therefore J will let it passe at this present.

The Grafting of great Cherries.

They graffe the great Cherry, called in French *Heaulmiers*, upon the Crabbe Stocke, and another long Cherry called *Guiniers*, upon the wild or sowre Cherry-tree, and likewise one Cherry upon another.

To graffe Medlars.

The Mispale or Medlar, they may be grafted on other Medlars, or on white Thorne, the Quince is grafted on the white or blacke Thorne, and they doe prosper well. I have grafted (saith he) the Quince upon a wild Peare Stocke, and it hath taken and borne fruit well and good, but they will not long endure. I beleeve (saith he) it was because the graft was not able enough to draw the sap from the Peare stocke. Some graft the Medlar on the Quince, to be great. And it is to be noted, although the Stocke and the Graft be of contrary natures: yet notwithstanding, neither the Graft nor Scutchion, shall take any part of the nature of the wild stocke so grafted, though it be Peare, Apple, or Quince, which is contrary

trary against many which have written, that if ye graft the Medlar upon the Quince-tree, they shall be without stones, which is abusive and mockery. For J have (saith he) proved the contrary my selfe.

Of divers kind of Graffes.

IT is very true, that one may set a Tree, which shall beare divers sorts offruit at once, if he be grafted with divers kind of grafts, as the blacke, white, and greene Cherry, together, and also Apples of other Trees, as Apples and Pears together, and in the Scutchion (ye may graft) likewise of divers kinds also, as on Pears, Apricocks, and Plums together, and of others also.

Of the graffing of the Figge.

YE may graft the Fig-tree upon the Peach tree or Apricock, but leave a branch on the stocke, and there must be according for the space of yeares, for the one shall change sooner then the other. All Trees abovesaid, doe take very well being grafted one with the other. And I have not knowne, or found of any others; howbeit (saith he) I have curiously sought and proved, because they say one may graft on Coleworts or on Elmes, the which I thinke are but Iests.

Of the great Apricocke.

THe great Apricocke they graft in Summer, in the Scutchion or Shield, in the sappe or bark of the lesser Apricock, and be grafted on Peach-trees, Fig-trees, and principally on Damson or Plum trees, for there they will prosper the better,

Of the Service-trees.

OF the Service tree, they say and write, that they may hardly be grafted on other Service-trees, either on Apple-trees, Peare, or Quince-trees: and I beleeve this to be very hard to doe, for I have tryed (saith he) and they would not prove.

The Setting of Service-trees.

THerefore it is much better to set them of Curnels, as it is aforesaid, as also in the second Chapter of planting of Cions, or other great Trees, which must be cut in Winter, as such as shall be most meete for that purpose.

Trees which be very hard to be grafted in the Shield or Scutcheon.

ALL other manner of Trees aforesaid, doe take very well to be grafted with Cions, and also in the Shield, except Apricocks on Peaches, Almonds, Percigniers, the Peach-tree doe take hardly to be grafted, but in the shield in Summer, as shall be more largely hereafter declared. As for the Almond, Percigniers and Peaches, ye may better set them of Curnels and Nuts, whereby they shall the sooner come to perfection to be grafted.

How a man ought to consider those Trees, which be commonly charged with fruit.

YE shall understand, that in the beginning of grafting, ye must consider what sorts of Trees, doe most charge the stocke with branch and fruit, or that doe love the Country or Ground whereas you intend to plant or graffe them: for better it were to have abundance of fruit, then to have very few or none.

Of Trees whereon to choose your Graffes.

OF such Trees as ye will gather your Graffes to graffe with, ye must take them at the ends of the principall Branches, which be also faire and greatest of Sappe, having two or three fingers length of the old wood, with the new, and those Cions which eyes somewhat nigh together, are the best; for those which be long, are farre one from another, and not so good to bring fruit.

The Cions towards the East are best.

YE shall understand, that those Cions which doe grow on the East, or Orient part of the Tree, are best: ye must not lightly

lightly gather of the evill and slender graffes which grow in the middest of the Trees , nor any graffes which doe grow within on the branches, or that doe spring from the stocke of the Tree, nor yet graffes which be on very old Trees , for thereby ye shall not lightly profit to any purpose.

To chuse your Tree for Graffes.

ANd when the Trees whereas you intend to gather your graffes, be small and yong, as of five or sixe years growth, doe not take of the highest grafts thereof, nor the greatest, except it be of a small Tree of two or three yeares , the which commonly hath too much of toppe or wood, otherwise not, for you shall but marre your grafting.

How to keepe Graffes a long time.

YE may keepe graffes a long time good, as from *Alhallontide* (so that the leaves be fallen) unto the time of grafting, if that they be well covered in the earth halfe a foot deep therein, and so that none of them doe appeare without the earth.

How to keepe Graffes before they are budded.

Also doe not gather them, except ye have great need, untill *Christmas* or thereabouts, and put them not in the ground nigh any walles for feare of Moles, Mice, and water, marring the place and graffes. It shall be good to keepe graffes in the earth before they begin to bud , when that ye will graft betwixt the barke and the Tree , and when the Trees begin to enter into their sappe.

How one ought to begin to Graffe.

Also ye must begin to graft (in cleaving the stocke) at *Christmas*, or before, according to the coldnesse of the time, and principally the Healine or great Cherry , Peares, Wardens, or forward fruit of Apples : and for Medlars it is good to tarry untill the end of *Ianuary* and *February*, untill *March*,

March, or untill such time as ye shall see Trees begin to bud or spring.

When it is good Graffing the wild Stockes.

IN the Spring time it is good Graffing of wild Stockes, (which be great) betwixt the barke and the tree, such stocks as are to be of later Spring, and kept in the earth before. The Damson or Plum carrieth longest to be grafted: for they doe not shew or put forth sappe, as soone as the other.

Marke if the Tree be forward or not.

ALso consider you alwayes, whether the Tree be forward or not, or to be grafted soone or lateward, and to give him also a graffe of the like hast or slownesse: even so ye must marke the time, whether it be slow or forward.

When one will graffe, what necessities he ought to be furnished withall.

WHensoever ye goe to graffing, see ye be first furnished with grafts, clay and mofse, clothes or barkes of fallow to bind likewise withall. Also ye must have a small Saw, and a sharpe knife, to cleave and cut Graffes withall. But it were much better if ye should cut your grafts with a great Penknife or some other like sharpe knife, having also a small wedge of hard wood, or of Iron, with a hooked knife, and also a small Mallet. And your wild stockes must be well rooted before ye do graffe them: and be not so quick to deceive your selves, as those which doe graffe and plant all at one time, yet they shall not profit so well, for where the wild stock hath not substance in himselfe, much lesse to give unto the other grafts, for when a man thinkes sometimes to forward himselfe, he doth hinder himselfe.

Of Graffes not prospering the first yeare.

YE shall understand, that very hardly your Graffes shall prosper after, if they doe not profit or prosper well in the first yeare, for whensoever (in the first yeare) they profit well,

it were better to graft them somewhat lower then to let them so remaine and grow.

For to graffe well and sound.

ANd for the best understanding of Graffing in the cleft, ye shall first cut away all the small Cions about the body of the stocke beneath, and before ye begin to cleave your stocke, dresse and cut your graffes somewhat thick and ready, then cleave your stocke, and as the cleft is small or great (if need be) part it smooth within, then cut your incision of your grafts accordingly, and set them in the clefts as even and as close as ye can pollible.

How to trim your Graffes.

ALso ye may graft your Graffes full as long as two or three trunchions or cut Grafts, which ye may likewise graffe withall very well, and will be as good as those which doe come of old wood, and often times better, as to graffe a bough, for often it so happeneth, a man shall find of Oylers or eyes hard by the old slender wood, yet better it were to cut them off with the old wood, and choose a better and faire place at some other eye in the same Graffe, and to make your incision there under, as aforesaid, and cut your grafts in making the incision on the one side narrow, and on the other side broad, and the inner-side thin, and the out-side thicke, because the out-side (of your Graffe) must joyne within the cleft, with the Sappe of barke of the wild Stocke, and it shall so be set in. See also that ye cut it smooth as your clefts are in the Stocke, in joyning at every place both even and close, and especially the joynts or corners of the graffes on the head of the stocke, which must be well and cleane pared before, and then set fast thereon.

How to cut Graffes for Cherries and Plums.

IT is not much requisite in the Healine Cherry, for to joyne the Grafts (in the stocke) wholly throughout, as it is in
F others

others, or to cut the grafts of great Cherries, Damsons, or Plums, so thinne and plaine as ye may other graffes, for these sorts have a more greater sappe or pithe within, the which ye must alwayes take heed in cutting it too high on the one side or on the other, but at the end thereof chiefly, to be thinne cut and flat.

Note also.

ANd yet if the said incision be more straighter and closer on the one side then on the other side, part it where it is most meete, and where it is too straight, open it with a wedge of Iron, and put in a wedge of the same wood above in the cleft, and thus may ye moderate your graffes as ye shall see cause.

*How in grafting to take heed that the Barke
doe not rise.*

IN all kind of cutting your Graffes, take heed to the barke of your grafts, that it doe not rise (from the wood) on no side thereof, and specially on the out side, therefore ye shall leave it more thicker then the inner-side: Also ye must take heed when as the stocks doe wreath in cleaving, that ye may joyne the graffe therein accordingly: the best remedy therefore is to cut it smooth within, that the graffe may joyne the better: ye shall also unto the most greatest Stockes, choose for them the most greatest Graffes.

How to cut your Stocke.

HOW much the more your stocke is thinne and slender, so much more ye ought to cut him lower, and if your stock be as great as your finger, or thereabouts, ye may cut him a foote or halfe a foote from the earth, and dig him about, and dung him with Goates dung, to helpe him withall, and graft him but with one Graffe or Cion.

If the wild Stocke be great and slender.

IF your wild Stocke be great, or as big as a good staffe, ye shall cut him round of, a foote or thereabouts above the
earth,

earth, then set in two good graffes in the head or cleft thereof.

Trees as great as ones Arme.

BUt when your Stocke is as great as your arme, ye shall saw him cleane off and round, three or foure foote, or thereabouts from the earth, for to defend him, and set in the head three graffes, two in the cleft, and one betwixt the barke and the Tree, on that side which ye have most space.

Great Trees as bigge as your Leg.

IF the Stocke be as bigge as your legge, or thereabouts, ye shall saw him faire and cleane of, foure or five foote high from the earth, and cleave him a crosse (if ye will) and set in foure grafts in the clefts thereof, or else one cleft onely, and set two grafts in both the sides thereof, and other two grafts betwixt the barke and the Tree.

When the Graffes be pinched with the Stocke.

YE must for the better understanding, marke to graffe betwixt the Barke and the Tree, for when the sappe is full in the wood of wild Stocks being great, then they doe commonly pinch or wring the grafts too sore, if ye doe not put a small wedge of greene wood in the cleft thereof, to helpe them withall against such danger.

How ye ought to cleave your Stockes.

VHensoever ye shall cleave your wild Stockes, take heed that ye cleave them not in the midst of the heart or pith, but a little on the one side, which ye shall thinke good.

How to graffe the branch of great Trees.

IF ye would graff great Trees, as great as your thigh, or greater, it were much better to graff onely the branches thereof, then the stocke or body, for the stocke will rot before the grafts shall cover the head.

How to cut Branches old and great.

BUt if the Branches be too rude, and without order (the best shall be) to cut them all off, and within three or foure yeares after they will bring faire young Cions againe , and then it shall be best to graft them, and cut off all the superfluous and ill branches thereof:

How ye ought to bind your Graffes throughout for feare of Winds.

ANd when your grafts shall be growne, ye must bind them, for feare of shaking of the wind, and if the Tree be free and good of himselfe, let the Cions grow still, and ye may graft any part or branch ye will in the cleft , or betwixt the barke and the Tree , or in the Scutchion, and if your barke be faire and loose.

To set many Graffes in one cleft.

EVer when ye will put many grafts in one cleft, see that one incision (of your Graft) be as large as the other, not to be put into the cleft so slightly and rashly , and that one side thereof be not more open then the other , and that these Grafts be all of one length : it shall suffice also if they have three eyes on each graft without the joynt thereof.

How to saw your stocke before you leave him.

IN sawing your stocke, see that you teare not the barke about the head thereof, then cleave his head with a long sharpe knife, or such like , and knocke your wedge in the midst thereof, (then pare him on the head round about) and knock your wedge in so deep till it open meet for your grafts but not so wide, then holding in one hand your graft and in the other hand your Stocke, set your Graft in close, barke to barke, and let your wedge be great above at the head, that ye may knocke him out faire and easily againe,

*If the Stocke cleave too much, or the barke
doe open.*

IF the Stocke doe cleave too much, or open the barke with the wood too low, then softly open your stocke with your wedge, and see if your incision of your Graft, be all meete, and just, according to the cleft, if not, make it untill it be meete, or else saw him off lower.

How Graffes never lightly take.

ABove all things ye must consider the meeting of the two saps, betwixt the graft and the wild stocke, which must be set in just one with another : for ye shall understand, if they doe not joyne, and the one delight with the other, being even set, they shall never take together, for there is nothing onely to joyne their increase, but the Sappe, recounting the one against the other.

How to set the Graffes right in the cleft.

VW^Hen the barke of the Stocke, is more thicker then the graft, ye must take good heed, of the setting it in of the graft in the cleft, to the end that his sappe may joyne right with the sap of the stocke, on the in-side, and ye ought likewise to consider of the sappe of the stocke, if he doe surmount the grafts in the out-sides of the cleft too much or not.

Of setting in the Graffes.

ALso ye must take good heed, that the grafts be well and cleane set in, and joyne close upon the head of the stock. Likewise then the incision which is set in the cleft, doe joyne very well within on both sides, not to joyne so even, but some times it may doe service, when as the Grafts doe draw too much from the Stocke, or the stocke also on the Grafts doe put forth.

Note also.

AND therefore, when the stock is rightly cloven, there is no danger in cutting the incision of the graft, but a lit-

the straight rebated to the end thereof, that the sappe may joyn one with the other, the better and closer together.

How ye ought to draw out your wedge.

VVhen your Graffes shall be well joyned with your stocke, draw your wedge faire and softly forth, for feare of displacing your graffes, ye may leave within the cleft a small wedge of such greene wood as is aforesaid, and ye shall cut it of close by the head of your stocke, and so cover it with a barke as followeth.

To cover your clefts on the head.

VVhen your wedge is drawne forth, put a greene pill of thicke barke of Willow, Crab, or Apple, upon your clefts of the stocke, that nothing may fall betweene: then cover all about the clefts on the stocke head, two fingers thicke with good clay, or nigh about that thicknesse, that no Wind nor Raine may enter. Then cover it round with good Mofse, and then wreath it over with clothes, or pilles of Willow, Bryar, or Oziers, or such like, then bind them fast, and sticke certaine long prickes on the grafts head amongst your Cions, to defend the Crowes, laves, or such like.

How ye ought to see to the binding of your Graffes.

BUt alwayes take good heed to the binding of your heads, that they waxe slacke, or shagge, neither on the one side or other, but remaines fast upon the clay, which clay remaines fast (likewise on the stocke head) under the binding thereof, wherefore the said clay must be moderated in such sort as followeth.

How ye ought to temper your Clay.

THe best way is therefore, to try your clay betwixt your hands, for stones and such like, and so to temper it as ye shall thinke good, if so it require of moystnesse or drinesse and to temper it with the haire of beastes: for when it dryeth, it holdeth

holdeth not (otherwise) so well on the stocke, or if ye knead of Mosse therewith, or mingle Hay thin therewith: some doe judge that the Mosse doth make the trees mossie. But I thinke (saith he) that cometh of the disposition of places.

To bush your graffe heades.

VHen ye shall bind or wrap your Graffe heades with band, take small Thornes, and bind them within, for to defend your Graffes from Kites, or Crowes, or other danger of other Fowles, or pricke of sharpe white stickes thereon.

The second way to graffe high Branches on Trees.

THe second manner to Graffe, is strange enough to many: This kind of Graffing is on the tops of branches of Trees, which thing to make them grow lightly, is not so soone obtained: wheresoever they be gratted, they doe onely require a faire young wood, a great Cion or twig, growing highest in the Tree top, which Cions ye shall choote to graffe on, of many sorts of fruits if ye will, or as ye shall thinke good, which order followeth.

Take grafts of other sorts of Trees, which ye would graffe in the top thereof, then mount to the top of the tree which ye would graft, and cut off the tops of all such branches, or as many as ye would graft on, and if they be greater then the grafts, which ye would graft, ye shall cut and graft them lower as ye doe the small, wild stocke aforesaid. Bnt if the Cions that you cut be as great as your graft that you graft on, ye shall cut them lower betwixt the old wood and the new, or a little more higher, or lower: then cleave a little, and choose your grafts in the like sort, which ye would plant, whereof ye shall make the incision short, with the barke on both sides a like, and as thicke on the one side as the other, and set so just in the cleft, that the barke may be even and close, as well above as beneath, on the one side as the other, and so bind him as is aforesaid.

said. It shall suffice that every graft have an oylet, or eye, or two at the most, without the joynt, for to leave them too long it shall not be good, and ye must dresse it with Clay and Masse, and bind it as it is aforesaid. And likewise ye may graffe these, as ye doe the little wild Stocks, which should be as great as your Graffes, and to graft them, as ye doe those with Sappe like on both sides, but then you must graffe them in the earth, as three fingers of, or thereabouts.

*The manner of Graffing, is of Graffes which
may be set betwixt the Barke
and the Tree.*

To graffe betwixt the Barke and the Tree.

THIS manner of grafting is good, when Trees do begin to enter into their Sap, which is, about the end of February unto the end of April, and specially on great wild stocks which be hard to cleave, ye may set in foure or five grafts in the head thereof, which grafts ought to be gathered afore, and kept close in the earth till then, for by that time aforesaid, ye shall scantily find a Tree, but that he doth put forth or bud, as the Apple called *Capendu*, or such like.

Ye must therefore saw these wild stocks more charily, and more higher, so they be great, and then cut the Graffes, which ye would set together, so as you would set them upon the wild stocke that is cleft, as is afore rehearsed. And the incision of your grafts must not be so long, nor so thick, and the barke a little at the end thereof must be taken away, and made in manner as a Lauacet of Iron, and as thicke on the one side as the other.

*How to dresse the head, to place the graffes betwixt
the Barke and the Tree.*

ANd when your grafts be ready cut, then shall ye cleanse the head of your stocke, and pare it with a sharpe knife round about the barke thereof, to the end your grafts may
joyne

joyne the better thereon, then by and by take a sharpe pen-
knife, or other sharpe pointed knife, and thrust it down be-
twixt the barke and the stock, so long as the incision of your
graffes be, then put your graffes softly downe therein to the
hard joynt, and see that it doe sit close upon the stocke head.

How to cover the head of your stocke.

VVhen as ye haue set in your graffes, ye must then
cover it well about with good tough Clay and
Mosse, as is sayd of the others, and then ye must incontinent
enuiroon or compasse your head with small thorny bushes, and
bind them fast thereon all about, for feare of great Birds, and
likewise the wind.

*Of the manner and graffing in the Shield
or Scutchion.*

THe fourth manner to graffe, which is the last, is to graffe
in the Scutchion, in the sap, in Sommer, from about the
end of the month of *May* vntill *August*, when as trees be
yet strong in sap and leaves, for otherwayes it cannot be done;
the best time is in *June* and *Iuly*, some yeares when the
time is very dry, and that some trees doe hold their sappe very
long; therefore ye must tary till it returne.

*For to graffe in Summer so long as the trees
be full leaved.*

FOr to begin this manner of graffing well, ye must in Sum-
mer when the trees be almost full of sappe, and when they
haue sprung forth of new shootes being somewhat hardened,
then shall ye take a branch thereof in the top of the tree, the
which ye will haue grafted, and choose the highest and the
principallest branches, without cutting it from the old wood,
and choose thereof the principallest oylet or eye, or budding
place, of each branch one, with which oylet or eye, ye shall
begin to graft as followeth.

The big Cions are best to graffe.

CHiefly ye must understand, that the smallest and naughty Coylets or buds of the said Cions be not so good to graffe; therefore chooe the greatest and best you can find, first cut of the leafe hard by the oyler, then ye shall trench or cut the length of a barley corne beneath the oyler round about the barke, hard to the wood, and so likewise above: then with a sharpe point of a knife, slit it downe halfe an inch beside the oyler or bud, and with the point of a sharpe knife softly raise the said Shield or Scutchion round about, with the oyler in the midst, and all the sap belonging thereunto.

How to take of the Shield from the wood.

ANd for the better raising the said Shield or Scutchion from the wood, after that ye have cut him round about, and then slit him down, without cutting any part of the wood within, ye must then raise the side next you that is slit, and then take the same Shield betwixt your finger and thumb, and plucke or raise it softly of, without breaking or brusing any part thereof, and in the opening or plucking it off, hold it with your finger hard to the wood, to the end the sap of the oyler may remaine in the Shield, for if it goe off (in plucking it) from the barke, and sticke to the wood, your Scutchions is nothing worth.

To know your Scutchion or Shield when he is good or bad.

ANd for the more easier understanding, if it be good or bad, when it is taken from the wood, looke within the said shield, and if ye shall see it cracke, or open within, then it is of no value, for the chiefe Sappe doth yet remaine behind with the wood, which should be in the shield, and therefore ye must choose and cut another Shield, which must be good and sound as aforesaid, and when your Scutchion shall be well taken of from the wood, then hold it dry by the oyler or eye betwixt your lips, untill ye have cut and taken of the barke from the
othe

other Cion or branch, and set him in that place, and looke that ye doe not foule or wet it in your mouth.

Of young Trees to graffe on.

But ye must graffe on such Trees, as be from the bignesse of your little finger, unto as great as your arme, having their barke thin and slender, for great Trees commonly have their barke hard and thicke, which ye cannot well graffe this way, except they have some branches with a thinne smooth barke, meet for this way to be done.

How to set or place your Shield.

YE must quickly cut of round the barke of the Tree that ye will graffe on, a little more longer then the Shield that ye set on, because it may joyne the sooner and easier, but take heed that in cutting of barke, ye cut not the wood within.

Note also.

After the incision once done, ye must then cover both the sides or ends well and softly withall, with a little bone or horne, made in manner like a thinne skinne, which ye shall lay it all over the joynts or closings of the said shield, somewhat longer and larger, but take heed for hurting or crushing the barke thereof.

*How to lift up the barke and to set your
Shield on.*

This done take your Shield or Scutchion, by the oylet or eye that he hath, and open him faire and softly by the two sides, and put them straight way on the other tree, whereas the barke is taken off, and joyne him close barke to barke thereon, then plaine it softly above, and at both the ends with the thinne bone, and that they joyne above and beneath barke to barke, so that he may feed well the branch of that Tree,

How to bind on your Shield.

THis done, ye must have a wreath of good Hempe, to bind the said shield on his place; the manner to bind it is this, ye shall make a wreath of Hempe together, as great as a Goose-quill, or thereabouts, or according to the bignesse or finalnesse of your Tree; then take your Hempe in the midst, that the one halfe may serve for the upper halfe of the shield, in winding and crossing with the Hemp, the said shield on the branch of the tree, but see that ye bind it not too straight, for it shall let him from taking or springing, and likewise their sap cannot easily come or passe from the one to the other: and see also that wet come not to your shield, nor likewise the Hempe that ye bind it withall. Ye shall begin to bind your Scutchion first behind in the midst of your Shield, in coming still lower and lower, and so recover under the oylet and tayle of your Shield, binding it nigh together, without recovering of the said oylet, then ye shall returne againe upward, in binding it backward to the midst where ye began. Then take the other part of the Hempe, and bind so likewise the upper part of your Shield, and encrease your Hempe as ye shall need, and so returne againe backward, and ye shall bind it so, till the fruits or clefts be covered (both above and beneath) with your said Hempe, except the oylet and the taile, the which ye must not cover, for that tayle will shed apart, if the Shield doe take.

On one Tree ye may graffe or put two or three shields.

YE may very well if ye will, on every tree graft two or three Shields, but see that one be not right against another, nor yet of the one side of the Tree, let your Shields so remaine bound on the Trees, one moneth or more, after they be grafted, and the greater the Tree is, the longer to remaine, and the smaller, the lesser time.

The time to unbind your Shield.

AND then after one moneth, or fixe weekes past, ye must unbind the Shield, or at the least cut the Hemp behind the Tree, and let it so remaine untill the Winter next following, and then about the month of *March* or *Aprill*, if ye will, or when ye shall see the sap of the Shield put forth, then cut the branch a bove the Shield, three fingers all about all off.

How to cut and governe the Branches grafted on the Tree.

THEN in the next yeare after that the Cions shall be well strengthened, and when they doe begin to spring, then shall ye cut them all hard of, by the shield above, for if ye had cut them so nigh in the first yeare, when they begin first to spring or bud, it should greatly hinder them against their increase of growing: Also when those Cions shall put forth a faire wood, ye must bind and stay them in the midst, faire and gently with small wands, or such like, that the wind and weather hurt them not. And after this manner of Graffing, is practised in the Shield or Scutchion, which way ye may easily graffe the white Rose on the Red: and likewise ye may have Roses of divers colours and sorts upon one branch or Rote. This I thought sufficient and meete to declare, of this kind of Graffing at this present.

CHAP. VI.

Of Transplanting or altering of Trees.

The sooner ye transplant or set them, it shall be the better.

YE ought to Transplant or set your trees from *Albion* unto *March*, and the sooner the better, for as soone as the leaves are fallen from the Trees, they be meete for to be Planted, if it be not in a very cold or

moist place, the which then it were best for to tarry untill *January*, or *February*, to plant in the Frost is not good.

To Plant or Set towards the South, or Sunny place is best.

AFore you doe plucke up your trees for to plant them, if ye will marke the South-side of each tree, that when ye shall replant them, ye may set them againe as they stood before, which is the best way as some doe say. And if ye keepe them a certaine time, after they be taken out of the Earth, before ye replant them againe, they will rather recover there in the earth, so they be not wet with Raine, nor otherwise, for that shall be more contrary to them then the great Heate or Drought.

How to cut the Branches of Trees before they be Set.

VHensoever ye shall set or replant your Trees, first ye must cut of the boughes, and specially those which are great branches, in such sort that ye shall leave the small twigs or sprigs, on the stockes of your branch, which must be but a shaftment long, or somewhat more, or lesse according as the Tree shall require, which ye doe set.

Apple trees commonly must be disbranched before they be replanted or set.

And chiefly the Apple Trees, being Graffed or not Graffed, doe require to be disbranched before they be set againe, for they shall prosper thereby, much the better: the other sorts of Trees may well passe unbranched, if they have not too great or large branches, and therefore it shall be good to transplant or set, as soone after as the grafes are closed, on the head of the wild Stocke, as for small Trees which have but one Cion or twig, it needs not to cut them above, when they be replanted or removed.

*All wild Stockes must be disbranched when they
are replanted or set.*

ALL wild trees or stockes, which ye thinke for to graffe on ye must first cut off all their Branches before ye set them againe: also it shall be good, alwayes to take heed in replanting your Trees, that ye doe set them again, in as good or better Earth, then they were in before, and so every Tree, according as his nature doth require.

*What Trees love the faire Sunne, what Trees
the cold Ayre.*

COMMONLY the most part of Trees, doe love the Sunne at Noone, and yet the South Wind (*or vent d'aval*) is very contrary against their nature, and specially the Almond-tree, the Apricocke, the Mulberry-tree, the Fig-tree, and the Pomegranade-tree. Certaine other Trees there be which love cold Ayre, as these: the Chesnut-tree, the wild and eager Cherry-tree, the Quince-tree, and the Damson or Plum-tree, the Walnut loveth cold Ayre, and a stony white Ground. Pearre-trees love not greatly plaine places, they prosper well enough in places closed with walles, or high Hedges, and specially the Pearre called *bon Christien*.

*Of many sorts and manner of Trees following,
their nature.*

THE Damson or Plum-tree doth love a cold fat earth, and clay withall, the (Healine) great Cherry doth love to be set or planted upon Clay. The Pine-tree loveth light earth stony and sandy. The Medlar commeth well enough in all kind of grounds, and doth not hinder his fruit, to be in the shadow and moist places. Hassell-nut-trees love the place to be cold; leane, moist and sandy. Ye shall understand, that every kind of fruitfull Tree doth love, and is more fruitfull in one place then another, as according unto their nature. Nevertheless, yet we ought to nourish them (all that we may) in the place where we set them in, in taking them from the place and ground

ground they were in. And ye must also consider when one doth plant them of the great and largest kind of Trees, that every kind of Tree may prosper and grow, and it is to be considered also, if the Trees have commonly grown afore so large in the ground or not, for in good earth the Trees may well prosper and grow, having a good space one from another, more then if the ground were leane and naught.

How to place or set Trees at large.

IN this thing ye shall consider, ye must give a competent space, from one Tree to another, when as ye make the holes to set them in, not nigh, nor the one tree touch another. For a good Tree planted, or set well at large, it profiteth oftentimes more of fruit then three or foure Trees, set too nigh together. The most greatest and largest Trees commonly are Walnuts and Chesnuts, if ye plant them severally in ranke, as they doe commonly grow upon high wayes, besides hedges and Fields, they must be set xxxv. foote asunder, one from another, or thereabouts, but if ye will plant many rankes in one place together, ye must set them the space of xlv. foot one from another, or thereabouts, and so farre ye must set your rankes one from another. For the Peare-trees and Apple-trees, and of other sorts of Trees, which may be set of this largenesse one from the other, if ye doe plant onely in rankes by hedges in the Fields, or otherwise, it shall be sufficient of xx. foote from another. But if ye will set two rankes upon the sides of your great Allies in Gardens, which be of tenn or twelve foote broad, it shall be then best to give them more space, the one from the other in each ranke, as about xxv. foote, also ye must not set your Trees right one against the other, but entermedling or betweene every space, as they may best grow at large, that if need be, ye may plant of other smaller Trees betweene, but see that ye set them not too thicke. If ye list to set or plant all your Trees of one bignesse, as of young Trees like rods, being Peare-trees, or Apple-trees, they must be set a good space one from another, as of twenty or thirty foote in square,

square, as to say, from one ranke to another. For to plant or set of smaller trees, as Plum-trees, and Apple-trees, of the like bignesse, it shall be sufficient for them foureteene or fiftene foote space in quarters. But if ye will plant or set two rankes in your Allies in Gardens, ye must devise for to proportion it after the largenesse of your said Allies. For to plant or set eger or sower Cherry-trees, this space shall be sufficient enough the one from the other, that is, of x. or xii. foote, and therefore if you make of great or large Allies in your Garden, as of x. foote wide, or thereabouts, they shall come well to passe, and shall be sufficient to plant your trees, of ix. or x. foot space and for the other lesser sorts of trees, as of Quince-trees, Fig-trees, Nut-trees, and such like, which be not commonly planted, but in one ranke together.

Ordering your Trees.

VHen that ye plant or set rankes, or every kind of trees together, ye shall set or plant the most smallest towards the Sun, and the greatest in the shade, that they may not annoy or hurt the small, nor the small the great. Also whensoever ye will plant or set of Pearce-trees, and Plumtrees, (in any place) the one with another, better it were to set the Plum-trees next the Sunne, for the Peares will dure better in the shade. Also ye must understand, when ye set or plant any rankes of trees together, ye must have more space betwixt your rankes and trees, (then when ye set but one ranke) that they may have roome sufficient on every side.

Ye shall also scarcely set or plant Pearce-trees, or Apple-trees, or other great Trees, upon dead or mossie barren ground unstirred; for they increase (thereon) to no purpose. But other lesser Trees very well may grow, as Plum-trees, and such like: now when all the said things above be considered, ye shall make your holes according to the space that shall be required of every Tree that ye shall plant or set, and also the place meete for the same, so much as ye may convenient, ye shall make your holes large enough, for ye must suppose

the tree ye doe set, hath not the halfe of his rootes he shall have hereafter; therefore ye must helpe him and give him of good fat earth, (or dung) all about the roots when as ye plant him. And if any of the same rootes be too long, and brused or hurt, ye shall cut them cleane off a slope-wise, so that the upper side (of each roote) so cut, may be longest in setting, and for the small Rootes which come forth all about thereof, ye may not cut them off as the great rootes.

*How ye ought to enlarge the holes for your Trees
when ye Plant them.*

FOr when as ye set the Trees in the holes, ye must then enlarge the rootes in placing them, and see that they take all downe-wards, without turning any rootes the end upward, and ye must not plant or set them too deepe in the earth, but as ye shall see cause. It shall be sufficient for them to be planted or set (halfe a foote, or thereabouts) in the earth, so that the earth be above all the rootes halfe a foote or more, if the place be not very burning and stony.

*Of Dung and good Earth, for your Plants
and Trees.*

ANd when as ye would replant or set, ye must have of good fat Earth or Dung, well mingled with a part of the same earth where is ye tooke your plants out of, with all the upper crests of the earth, as thicke as ye can have it: the said earth which ye shall put about the rootes, must not be put too nigh the roots, for doubt of the dung being laid too nigh, which will put the said rootes in a heate, but let it be well mingled with the other earth, and well tempered in the hole, and the smallest and slenderest Cions that turnes up among those Rootes, ye may plant there very well.

*If ye have wormes amongst the Earth of
your Rootes.*

IF there be wormes in the fat Earth or Dung, that ye put about your roots, ye must mingle it well also with the dung
of

of Oxen or Kine, or flect Sope-ashes about the Roote, which will make the wormes to-dye, for otherwise they will hurt greatly the Rootes.

*To digge well the earth about the Tree
Rootes.*

Also ye must digge well the earth, principally all round over the rootes, and more oftner if they be dry, then if they be wet, ye must not plant or set Trees when it raineth, nor the earth to be very moyst about the rootes. The Trees that be planted or set in Vallies, commonly prosper well by Drought, and when it raineth, they that be on the Hills are better by watering with drops, then others, but if the place or ground be moist of nature, ye must plant or set your Trees not so deepe thereon.

The nature of Places.

ON high and dry places, ye must plant or set your Trees a little more deeper, then in the Vallies, and ye must not fill the holes in high places, so full as the other, to the end that the Raine may better moisten them.

Of good Earth.

VNderstand also, that of good earth, commonly commeth good fruit, but in certaine places (if they might be suffered to grow) they would season the Tree the better. Otherwise they shall not come to prooffe, nor yet have a good tast.

With what ye ought to bind your Trees.

VVhensoever your Trees shall be replanted or set, ye must knocke by the roote, a stake, and bind your Trees thereto for feare of the wind: and when they doe spring, ye shall dresse them and bind them with bands that may not breake, which bands may be of strong soft hearbes, as Bul-rushes, or such like, or of old linnen clouts, if the other be not strong enough, or else ye may bind them with Oziers, or such like, for feare of fretting or hurting your Trees.

CHAP. VII.

*Of medicining and keeping the Trees when they
are planted.*

*The first counsell is, when your Trees be but
Plants, in dry weather, they
must be watered.*

THe young trees which be newly Planted, must sometimes (in Summer) be watered when the time waxeth dry, at the least the first yeare after they be planted or set. But as for the greater trees which are well taken and rooted a good time, ye must dig them all over the rootes after *Alhallontide*, and uncover them foure or five foote compass about the roote of the tree: and let them so lye uncovered untill the latter end of Winter. And if ye doe, then mingle about each tree of good fat earth or dung, to heate and comfort the earth withall, it shall be good.

With what Dung, ye ought to Dung your Trees.

ANd principally unto Mossie trees, dung them with Hogs dung mingled with other earth of the same ground, and let the dung of Oxen be next about the roots, and ye shall also abate the Mosse of the Trees with a great knife of wood, or such like, so that ye hurt not the barke thereof.

When ye ought to uncover your Trees in Summer.

IN the time of Summer, when the earth is scanty halfe moist, it shall be good to digge at the foote of the Trees, all about on the roote, such as not have beene uncovered in the Winter before, and to mingle it with good fat earth: and so fill it againe, and they shall doe well.

When

*When ye ought to cut or proyne your
Trees.*

ANd if there be in your Trees certaine Branches of superfluous wood, that ye will cut off, tarry untill the time of the entring in of the Sappe, that is, when they begin to bud, as in *March* and *Aprill*: Then cut off as ye shall see cause, all such superfluous Branches hard by the Tree, that thereby the other Branches may prosper the better, for then they shall sooner close their sappe upon the cut places then in the Winter, which should not doe so well to cut them, as certaine doe teach, which have not good experience. But for so much as in this time the Trees be entring into the Sappe, as is aforesaid. Take heed therefore in cutting them off your great Branches hastily, that through their great waight, they doe not cleave or separate the Barke from the Tree, in any part thereof.

How to cut your great Branches, and when.

AND for the better remedy: first you shall cut the same great Branches, halfe a foote from the tree, and after to saw the rest cleane hard by the body of the Tree, then with a broad Chizell, cut all cleane, and smooth upon that place, then cover it with Oxe Dung. Ye may also cut them well in Winter so that ye leave the trunke or branch somewhat longer, so as ye may dresse and cut them againe in *March* and *Aprill*, as is before mentioned.

*How ye ought to leave these great
Branches cut.*

OTher things here are to be shewed, of certaine grafts and old-Trees onely, which in cutting the great branches thereof truncheon-wise, doe renewe againe, as Walnuts, Mulberry-trees, Plum-trees, Cherry-trees, with others, which ye must disbranch the boughes thereof, even after *Alhallontide*, or as soone as their leaves be fallen off, and likewise before they begin to enter into Sappe.

Of Trees having great Branches.

THe said great Branches, when ye shall disbranch them ye shall to cut them off in such Truncheons, to lengthen the Trees, that the one may be longer then the other, that when the Cions be growne good and long thereon, ye may graffe on them againe as ye shall see cause, according as every arme shall require.

Of barrenness of trees, the time of cutting all branches, and of uncovering the Rootes.

Sometimes a man hath certaine old Trees, which be almost spent, as of the Peare-trees, and Plum-trees, and other great Trees, the which beare scant of fruit: but when as ye shall see some Branches well charged therewith, then ye ought to cut off all the other ill Branches and Boughes, to the end that those that remaine, may have the more Sap, to nourish their fruit, and also to uncover their rootes after *Alhallontide*, and to cleave the most greatest rootes thereof (a foote from the trunke) and put into the said clefts, a thin slate of hard stone, there let it remaine, to the end that the humour of the Tree may enter out thereby, and at the end of Winter, ye shall cover him againe, with as good fat earth as ye can get, and let the stone alone.

Trees which ye must helpe, or plucke up by the Rootes.

ALL sorts of Trees which spring Cions from the Rootes, as Plum-trees, all kind of Cherry-trees, and small Nut-trees, ye must helpe in plucking their Cions from their roots in Winter, as soo as conveniently ye can, after the leafe is fallen. For they doe greatly plucke downe and weaken the said trees, in drawing to them the substance of the earth.

What doth make a good Nut.

But chiefly to plant these Cions, the best way is to let them grow, and be nourished two or three years from the roote,

roote, and then to transplant them, or set them in the Winter, as is aforesaid. The Cions which be taken from the foote of the Hassell-trees, make good Nuts, and to be of much strength and vertue, when they are not suffered to grow too long from the Roote, or foote aforesaid.

*Trees eaten with Beasts must be grafted
again.*

VHen certaine graffes being well in Sappe, of three or foure yeares or thereabouts, be broken or greatly endamaged with beasts, which have broked thereof, it shall little profit to leave those Graffes so, but it were better to cut them, and to graffe them higher, or lower then they were before. For the Graffes shall take as well upon the new as old Cion being grafted, as on the wild stocke: But it shall not so soone close: as upon the wild stocke-head.

*How your wild Stockes ought not hastily to be
removed.*

IN the beginning when ye have grafted your Graffes on the wild Stocke, doe not then hastily plucke up those Cions or wild stockes so grafted, untill ye shall see the graffes put forth a new sheute, the which remaining still ye may graffe thereon againe, so that your graffes in hasty removing, may chance to dye.

*When ye cut off the naughty Cions from
the Wood.*

VHen your Graffes on the stockes shall put forth of new wood, or a new sheute, as of two or three foot long, and if they put forth also of other small superfluous Cions (about the said members or branches that ye would nourish) cut off all such ill Cions, hard by the head, in the same yeare they are grafted in, but not so long as the wood is in Sappe, till the Winter after.

How

*How sometimes to cut the principall
Members.*

Also it is good to cut some of the principall Members or Branches in the first Yeare, if they have too many, and then againe, within two or three yeares after, when they shall be well sprung up, and the gresses well closed on the head of the stocke: ye may trimme and dreffe them againe, in taking away the superfluous branches, if any there remaine, for it is sufficient enough to nourish a young Tree, to leave him one principall Member on the head, so that he may be one of those, that hath beene grafted on the Tree before, yea, and the Tree shall be fairer and better in the end, then if he had two or three branches, or precidence at the foote. But if the Tree have beene grafted with many great Cions, then you must leave him more largely, according as ye shall see cause or need to recover the clefts on the head of the said graffe or stocke.

*How to guide and governe the said
Trees.*

Vhen that your Trees doe begin to spring, ye must order and see to them well, the space of three or foure yeares or more, untill they be well and strongly grown, in helping them above, in cutting the small twigs, and superfluous wood, untill they be so high without branches, as a man, or more if it may be, and then see to them well, in placing the principall branches if need be, with forkes or wands pricke right, and well about them at the foot, and to proine them, so that one branch doe not approach too nigh the other, nor yet fret the one the other, when as they doe enlarge and grow, and ye must also cut off certaine branches in the Tree, where as they are too thicke.

A kind of Sicknesse in Trees.

Likewise when certaine Trees are sicke of the Gall, which is a kind of Sicknesse that doth eat the Barke, therefore ye must cut it, and take out all the same infection with a
little

little Chizell, or such like thing. This must be done at the end of Winter, then put on that infected place of Oxe Dung, or Hogs Dung and bind it fast thereon with Cloutes, and wrap it with Oziers, so let it remaine a long time, till it shall recover againe.

Trees which have Wormes in the Barke.

OF Trees which have Wormes within their Barkes, is where as ye shall see a swelling or rising therein, therefore ye must cut or cleave the said barke unto the wood, to the end the humour may also distill out thereat, and with a little hooke ye must plucke or draw out the said wormes, withall the rotten wood ye can see, then shall ye put upon the said place, a Plaister made of Oxe Dung, or Hogs Dung, mingled and beaten with Sage, and a little of unsleckt Lime, then let it be all well boild together, and wrap it on a cloth, and bind it fast and close thereon so long as it will hold. The Lees of Wine shed or powred upon the Rootes of Trees (the which be somewhat sicke through the coldnesse of the Earth) which Lees doth them much good.

*Snayles, Ants, and Wormes, doth marre
Trees.*

ALso ye must take heed of all manner of young trees, and specially of those graffes, the which many Wormes and Flyes, doe endamage and hurt in the time of Summer, those are the Snayles, the Pismires, or Ants: the field Snail, which hurteth also all other sorts of Trees that be great, principally in the time that the Cuckow doth sing, and betwixt *Aprill* and *Midsummer*, while they be tender. There be little Beasts called Sowes, which have many Legs, and some of them be gray, some black, and some hath a long sharpe snout, which be very noysome, and great hurters of young Graffes, and other young Trees also, for they cut them off in eating the tender top (of the young Cions) as long as ones finger.

How ye ought to take the said Wormes.

FOr to take them well, ye must take heed and watch in the heate of the day (your young Trees) and where ye shall see any, put your hand softly underneath, without shaking the tree, for they will suddainly fall when one thinkes to take them: therefore so soone as you can (that they flye not away nor fall) take them (quickly on the Cion) with your other hand.

To keepe Ants from young Trees.

FOr to keepe the yong Trees from Snails and Ants, it shall be good to take Ashes, and to mingle unsleckt Lime, beaten in powder therewith, then lay it all about the root of the tree, and when it raineth, they shall be beaten downe into the Ashes and dye: but ye must renew your Ashes after every Raine from time to time: also to keepe them moyst, ye must put certaine small Vessels full of water, at the foote of your said Trees, and also the Lees of Wine, to be spred on the ground there all abouts. For the best destroying of the small Snails on Trees, ye must take good heed in the Spring time before the Trees be leaved, then if ye shall see as it were small warts, knobs or branches on the Trees, the same will be Snails. Provide to take them away faire and softly, before they be full closed, and take heed that ye hurt not the wood or barke of the said Tree, as little as ye can, then burne those Branches on the Earth, and all to tread them under your feet, and then if any doe remaine or renew, looke in the heate of the day, and if ye can see any, which will commonly be on the clefts or forkes of the Branches, and also upon the branches lying like costes or Troopes together, then wrap your hands all over with old clothes, and bind of leaves beneath them, and above them, and with your two hands rub them downe therein, and straight way fire it, if ye doe not quickly with diligence they will fall, and if they fall on the Earth, ye cannot tightly kill them, but they will renew againe: these kind of Wormies are noysome Flyes which be very strange, therefore take heed that they doe not cast a certaine rednesse on your

your face and body, for where as they be many of them, they be dangerous: it is strange to tell of these kind of Wormes, if ye come under or among the Trees whereas be many, they will cast your face and hands, your covered body (as your necke, breast, and armes) full of small spots, some red, some blacke, some blewish, which will to tingle and trouble you like Nettles, sometimes for a day, or a day and a night after: they be most on Plum-trees, and Apple-trees, nigh unto moist places, and ill ayres: yet nevertheless, by the grace of God there is no danger, that I understand, to be taken by them. Ye shall understand, that if it be in the evening, or in the morning, when it raineth, they will remaine about the graffing place of the Tree, therefore it will be hard to find them, because they are so small: Moreover, if such branches doe remaine in the upper part of the boughes all under, then with a wispe on a Poles end, set fire on all, and burne them,

A Note in Spring time of Fumigations.

Here is to be understood and noted, that in the Spring time Honely, when trees doe begin to put forth leaves and Blossomes, ye must then alwayes take heed unto them, for to defend them from the Frost, if there come any, with Fumigations or smokes, made on the windy side of your Orchards, or under your Trees, with straw, Hay, dry Chaffe, dry Ox dung, of Saw dust dried in an Oven, of Tanners Oze dried likewise, of galbanum, of old shoes, thatch of Houses, of haire and such like, one of these to be blond with another: all these be good against the Frost in the Spring time, and specially good against the East wind, which breedeth (as some say) the Caterpillar worme.

To defend the Caterpillar.

And some doe defend their Trees from the Caterpillar when the blossoming time is dried (it there be no Frost) by casting of Water, or salt Water, every second or
I 2 third

third day upon their Trees, (with Instruments for the same, as with Squires of Wood or Brasse or such like) for in keeping of them moist, the Caterpillar cannot breed thereon; this experience have I knowne proved of late to be good. For to conclude, he that will Set or Plant Trees, must not passe for any paines, but have a pleasure and delight therein, in remembering the great profit that commeth thereby:

Against scarcenelle of Corne, fruit is a good
stay for the Poore, and often it hath
become scene, one Aker of Orchard
ground, worth foure
Akers of Wheat
Ground.

* * *

F F N S.



HEERE



HEERE FOLLOW-
ETH A LITTLE TREA-
tise, how one may Graffe, Plant,
and Garden, subtile or artificially,
and to make many things in Gar-
dens very strange.

E Or to Graffe a subtile way, take one oylet or eye of
a Graffe, slit it round, above and beneath, and
then behind downe right, then wreath him of,
and set him upon another Cion, as great as he is,
then dresse him, as is aforesaid, and he shall grow and beare.

To graffe one Vine upon another:

B Ut for to graffe one Vine upon another, ye shall cleave
him as ye doe other Trees, and then put the Vine graffe
in the cleft, then stop him close and well with Waxe, and
so bind him, and he shall grow.

Y E shall uncover his roote, and make a hole with a Pier-
cer, or small Auger in the greatest roote he hath, without
piercing through the roote, then put in a pin (in the said hole)
of dry Wood, as Oke or Ash, and so let it remaine in the

said hole, and stop it close againe with waxe and then cast earth and cover him againe, and he shall beare the same yeare.

*For to have Peaches two Moneths before
other.*

Take your Cions of a Peach-tree that doth soone blossome in the Spring time, and graft them upon a franke Mulberry-tree, and he shall bring of Peaches two moneths before others.

*To have Damsons or other Plums unto
Alhallontide.*

For to have Damsons all the Summer long, unto *Alhallontide*, and of many other kind of sorts likewise, ye shall graft them upon the Gooseberry-tree, upon the franke Mulberry-tree, and upon the Cherry-tree, and they shall indure on the Trees till *Alhallontide*.

*To make Medlars, Cherries, and Peaches in
eating to tast like spice.*

TO make Medlars, Cherries and Peares, to tast in the eating pleasant like spice, the which may also keepe untill the new come againe: ye shall graffe them upon the frank Mulberry tree, as I have afore declared, and in the grafting, ye shall wet them in Hony, and put a little of the Powder of some good spices, as the Powder of Cloves, of Cinamon, or Ginger.

To make a Muscadell tast.

TO make a Muscadell tast, take a Gouge or Chiezell of Iron (and cut your Sap round about) then put in your Gouge or Chiezell under your Sappe on your Cion, and raise three eyes or eylets round about, and so take off faire and softly your bark round about, and when he is so taken off, doe annoint it all over within the barke, with powder of Cloves, or Nutmegs, then set it on againe, and stop it close with Waxe round about, that no water may enter in, and with within thrice bearing, they shall bring a faire Muscadell Reison, which

which ye may after both graffe and plant, and they shall be all after a Muscadell fruit: some flits the barke downe, and so put in of Spice.

*To set Apples and Peares to come
without blossoming.*

FOR to make Apples and Peares, and other sorts of fruit to come without blossoming, that is, ye shall graft them (as ye doe other kind of fruit) upon the Fig-tree.

*To have Apples and Chesnuts rath and also
long on Trees.*

FOR to have Apples called (in French) *de blanc Durell*, or *de Yroall*, and of Chesnuts very rath, and long (as untill *Alhallontide*) on the trees; and make such fruit also to endure, the space of two yeares, ye shall graft them on a laterward fruit, as Pome-Richard, or upon a Peare-tree, or Apple-tree of *Dangoisse*.

*To have good Cherries on the trees
at Alhallontide.*

TO have Cherries on many trees, good for to eat untill *Alhallontide*, ye shall graft them upon a franke Mulberry Tree, and likewise to graft them upon a Willow or Sallow-tree, and they shall indure unto *Alhallontide* on the Trees.

*To have rath Medlars two Moneths
before others.*

FOR to have Medlars two moneths sooner then others; and the one shall be better farre then the other, ye shall graft them upon a Gooseberry-tree, and also a frank Mulberry tree, and before ye doe graft them, ye shall wet them in Honey, and then so graffe them.

For to have rath or timely Peares.

FOR to have a rath Peare, the which is in France, as the *Peare Cailonet*, and the *Peare Haffimean*. For to have them

them rath or soone, ye shall graft them on the Pine-tree: And for to have them late, ye shall graft them on the Peare called in French *Dangoisse*, or on other like hard Peares.

*To have Missles or Medlars without
Stones.*

FOr to have Medlars without Stones, the which shall tast sweet as Hony, ye shall graffe them as the other, upon an Egline, or sweet Bryer-tree, and ye shall wet the grafts (before ye graft them in Hony,

To have Peares betimes.

Also to have the Peare *Anguisse*, or *Permain*, or *Satigle*, (which be of certaine places so called) a Moneth or two before others, the which shall endure and be good untill the new come againe, ye shall graft them upon a Quince-tree, and likewise upon the franke Mulberry-tree.

*To have ripe or franke Mulberries very
soone and late.*

FOr to have franke or ripe Mulberries very soone, ye shall graffe them upon a rath Peare tree, and upon the Gooseberry-tree, and to have very late, and to endure unto *Alhaultide*, ye shall graft them upon the Medlar-tree.

To keepe Peares a Yeare.

How for to keepe Peares a yeare, ye shall take of fine salt very dry, and put thereof with your Peares into a barrell, in such sort that one Peare doe not touch another, so fill the barrell if ye list, then stop it, and let it be set in some dry place that the Salt doe not waxe moitt, thus ye may keepe them long and good.

*To have your fruit tast halfe Apples,
halfe Peares.*

If ye will have your fruit tast halfe a Peare, and halfe an Apple, ye shall in the Spring take Graffes, the one a Peare
and

and the other an Apple, ye shall cleave or pare them in the Graffing joynt or place, and joyne halfe the Pearce Cion, and to set them into your stocke, and see well that no raine doe enter therein upon your joynt, and that fruit shall bring thee halfe a Pearce, and the other halfe an Apple in tast.

Times of Graffing.

IT is good also to graffe one or two days before the change, and no more, for looke so many more dayes, as ye shall Graffe before them, so many more yeares it will be ere your Trees shall bring fruit: also it is good graffing all the increafe of the Moone, but the sooner after the change, the better.

To Graffe the Quine Apple.

IF ye graffe the Quine Apple, upon an Apple stock, he shall not long continue without the Canker, but to graffe him on a knotty young Crabstocke, he shall indure long without the Canker.

To destroy Pismires or Ants about a Tree.

TO destroy Emets or Ants, which be about a Tree, if ye remove and stirre the earth all about the root of the said Tree, then put thereon all about, a great quantity of the soote of a Chimney, and the Ants of Pismires will either away or else shortly dye.

Another for the same.

TO destroy Ants another way, ye shall take of the Saw-dust of Oke wood onely, and throw that all about the Tree root and the next raine that doth come, all the Pismires or Ants shall dye there: For Earewigs, shoes stopt with Hay, and hanged on the Tree one night, they come all in.

To have Nuts, Plummcs, and Almonds.

Nuts greater then other.

TO have great Nuts, Plums, and Almonds greater then others, ye shall take foure Nuts, or of any of this fruit

fruit above-said, and put them into a pot of earth, joyning the one to the other as neere as ye can, then make a hole in the bottome of the pot, through the which holes, these Nuts shall be constrained to issue, and being so constrained, shall come to perfection and grow together as in one Tree, the which in time shall bring his fruit more greater and larger then others.

*To make an Oke or other tree greene in
Winter as in Summer.*

Also to make an Oke or other Tree to be greene as well in Winter as in Summer, ye shall take the Graffe of an Oke tree, or other Tree, and graffe it upon the Holly Tree; the best and most surest way is, to graffe one through the other. And who so will edifie or make an Orchard, he ought (if he can) to make it in a moist place, where as the South^e winds, or Sea winds may have recourse unto them.

*The time of Planting without Rootes, and
with Rootes.*

Also the best time to plant or set without rootes as with branches or iteverings of all sorts of Trees which hath a great pith, as Fig trees, Haseil-trees, Mulberry-trees, and Vines, with other like Trees, all which ought to be set from the middest of September (if the leaves be of) unto *Alballontide*, and all other Trees with rootes, ought to be set in Advent untill *Christmas*, or anone after, if the time be not very cold and dangerous.

To keepe fruit from the Frost.

Also to keep fruit from the Frost, and in good colour, untill the new come againe, ye ought so for to gather them when the time is faire and dry and the Moone in her decreasing, and that they lye also in very dry places by night, covered thinne with Wheat straw, and if the time of Winter be cold and very hard, then put of Hay above them in your straw, and take it away

away when as a faire time commeth, and thus ye shall keepe your fruit faire and good.

The dayes to Plant and Graffe.

ALso (as some say) from the first day of the new Moone, unto the xiii. day thereof, is good for to plant, or Graffe, or sow, and for great need, some doe take unto the xvii. or xviii. day thereof, and not after, neither graffe nor sow, but as is afore-mentioned, a day or two dayes afore the change, the best signes are, *Taurus, Virgo, and Capricorne.*

To have greene Roses all the yeare.

FOr to have greene Roses, ye shall (as some say) take your Rose buds in the Spring time, and then graffe them upon the Holly-stocke, and they shall be greene all the yeare.

To keepe Raisons or Grapes good a yeare.

FOr to keepe Raisons or Grapes good all a whole yeare, ye shall take of fine dry Sand, and then lay your Raisons or Grapes therein, and it shall keepe them good a whole yeare. Some keepe them in a close Glasse from the ayre.

To make fruit laxitive from the Tree.

FOr to make any fruit laxitive from the Tree, what fruit soever it be, make a hole in the stocke, or in the maister roote of the Tree, (with a great Piercer slope-wise) not through, but unto the pith, or somewhat further, then fill the said hole with the juyce of Elder, of *Centory*, of *Seny*, or of *Ternith*, or such like laxitives, then fill the said hole therewith of which of them ye will, or else ye may take three of them together, and fill the said hole therewith, and then stop the said hole close with soft Waxe, then lay it thereon, and put mosse very well over all, so that nothing may issue or fall out, and all the fruit of the said Tree shall be from thence-forth laxitive.

A Note for all Grafters and Planters.

A Llo whensoever ye shall Plant or Graffe, it shall be meet and good for you to say as followeth. In the name of God the Father, the Sonne and the Holy Ghost, Amen.

Increase and multiply, and replenish the earth: and say the Lords Prayer, then say: Lord God heare my prayer, and let this my desire of thee be heard. The holy Spirit of God which hath created all things for Man, and hath given them for our comfort, in thy name O LORD wee see, Plant and Graffe, desiring that by thy mighty power they may encrease and multiply upon the earth, in bearing plenty of fruit, to the profit and comfort of all the faithfull people, through Christ our Lord, Amen.





*Heere followeth certaine wayes of Planting, and Graffing,
with other necessities heerein meete to be knowne.*

Translated out of Dutch, by L. M.

To graffe one Vine on another.

YOU that will Graffe one Vine upon another, ye shall (in January) cleave the head of the Vines, as ye doe other stockes, and then put in your Vine, Graffe or Cion, but first ye must pare him thin ere ye set him in the head, then Clay and Moulde him as the o-her.

*Chosen dayes to Graffe in and to choose
your Cions.*

Also whensoever that ye will Graffe, the best chosen time is on the last day before the Change, and also in the Change, and on the second day after the change, if ye Graffe (as some say) on the third, fourth, and fifth day

after the change, it will be so many yeares ere those Trees bring forth fruit. Which thing ye may beleeeve if ye will, but I will not. For some doe hold opinion, that it is good grafting from the change unto the xviii. day thereof, which I thinke to be good in all the increasing of the Moone, but the sooner the better.

To gather your Cions.

Also such Cions or Graffes, which ye doe get on the other Trees, the young Trees of three or foure yeares, or five or sixe yeares are best to have Graffes. Take them of no under boughes, but in the top upon the East side, if ye can, and of the fairest and greatest. Ye shall cut them two inches long of the old Wood, beneath the joynt. And whensoever ye will graffe, cut or pare your Graffes taper-wise from the joynt, two inches or more of length, which ye shall set into the stocke; and before ye set it in, ye shall open your stocke with a wedge of Iron, or hard wood, faire, and softly; then if the sides of your clefts be ragged ye shall pare them with the point of a sharp knife on both sides within and above, then set in your Graffes close on the out-sides, and also above; but let your stocke be as little while open as ye can, and when your grafts be well set in, plucke forth your wedge, and if your stockes doe pinch your grafts much, then ye must put in a wedge of the same wood to helpe your Graffes: Then ye shall lay a thicke barke or pill over the cleft, from the one Gr. ft. to the other, to keepe out the clay and raine, and so clay them two fingers thicke round about the cliftes, and then lay on Mousse, but wooll is better next to your clay, or else to temper your Clay with wooll or haire, for it shall make it hide closer, and also stronger on the stock-head, some take wooll next the clay and wrappeth it all over with linnen clouts, for the wool being once moist will keep the clay so a long time. And other some take Wollen clouts, that have beene laid in the iuyce of Worme-wood, or such like bitter thing, to keep creeping Worms from coming under to the Grafts. If ye graffe in Winter, put your clay uppermost, for Summer, your Mousse. For in Winter the Mousse is

warmer,

warme, and your clay will not cleave. In Summer your clay is cold, and your Moile keepes him from cleaving or chapping. To bind them, take of Willow pills, of cloven Briers, of Oziers, or such like. To gather your Graffes of the East part of the tree is counted best; if ye gather them below on the under boughes, they will grow higgie, and spreading abroad: If ye take them in the top of the tree, they will grow upright. Yet some doe gather there Cions or Graffes on the sides of the trees and so graffe them againe on the like sides of the stocks, the which is of some men not counted so good for fruit. It is not good to graft a great stocke, for they will be long ere they cover the head thereof.

Of Wormes in Trees or fruit.

IF ye have any trees eaten with Worms, or doe bring Wormy fruit, ye shall use to wash all his body and great branches, with two parts of Cowpisse and one part of Vineger, or else if ye can get no Vineger, with Cowpisse alone, tempered with coman Ashes, then wash your trees therewith before the Spring, and in the Spring for in Summer. Anniseeds sowne about the tree rootes, drive away wormes, and the fruit shall be the sweeter.

The setting of Stones and ordering thereof

AS for Almond-trees, Peach-trees, Cherry-trees, Plum-trees, or others, ye shall thus plant or set them. Lay first the stones in water, three dayes and foure nights untill they sinke therein, then take them betwixt your finger and your thumbe, with the small end upward, and so set them two fingers deepe in good earth. And when ye have so done, ye shall rake them all over, and so cover them: and when they begin to grow or spring, keepe them from weeds and they shall prosper the better, specially in the first yeare. And within two or three yeares after, ye shall set or remove them where ye list, then if ye doe remove them againe after that, ye must proue of all his twigs, as ye shall see cause, nigh the stocke: this ye may doe of all kind of Trees, but specially those which have the great Sappe, as the Mulberry or Fig trees, or such like.

To gather Gumme of any Tree.

If ye list to have the Gumme of an Almond-tree, ye shall hitte a great naile into the Tree, a good way, and so let him rest, and the Gumme (of the Tree) shall issue thereat, thus do men gather Gumme of all sorts of Trees: yea, the common Gumme that men doe use and occupy.

To set a whole Apple.

Also some say, that if ye set a whole Apple foure fingers in the earth, all the Pepins or Curnels in the same Apple, will grow up together in one whole stocke or Cion, and all those Apples shall be much fairer and greater then others: but ye must take heed, how ye doe set those Apples, which doe come in Leape-yeare, for in a Leape-yeare (as some doe so) the Curnels or Pepins, are turned contrary. for if ye should so set as commonly a man doth, ye shall set them contrary.

Of setting the Almond.

Almonds doe come forth and grow commonly well if they be set without the shell or huske, in good earth or in rotten Hogs dung: If ye lay Almonds one day in Vineger, then shall they (as some say) be very good to plant or lay him in milke and water, untill he doe sinke, it shall be the better to set, or any other Nur.

Of Pepins watered.

THe Pepins and Curnels of those Trees, which have a thicke or rough barke, if ye lay them three dayes in water, or else untill they sinke therein, they shall be the better. then set them, or sow them, as is afore-mentioned, and then remove them, when they be wel rooted, or three or foure years growth and they shall have a thinne barke.

To Plant or set Vines.

If ye Plant or set Vines in the first or second yeare, they will bring no fruit, but in the third yeare they will beare, if they

be well kept : ye shall cut them in *January*, and set them soon after they be cut from the Vine, and ye shall set two together the one with the old wood, and the other without, and so let them grow, plucking away all weeds from about them, and when ye shall remove them in the second and third year, being well rooted, ye shall set them well a foote deepe, (in good fat earth) with good dung, as of one foot deepe or thereabouts, and keep them cleane from weeds, for then they will prosper the better, and in Summer when the Grape is knit, then ye shall breake off his top or branch, at one or two joynts after the Grape, and so the Grape shall be the greater, and in the Winter when ye cut them, ye shall not leave past two or three leaders on each branch, on some branch but one leader, which must be cut betwixt two joynts, and ye shall leave the young Vine to be the leader. Also ye shall leave thereof three or foure joynts at all times, if a young Cion doe come forth of the old branch, or side thereof, if ye doe cut him ye shall cut him hard by the old branch, and if ye will have him to bring the Grape next year, ye shall leave two or three joynts thereof, for the young Cion alwayes bringeth the Grape : ye may at all times so that the Grape be once taken and knit, ever as the superfluous Cions doe grow, ye may breake them off at a joynt, or hard by the old branch, and the Grapes will be the greater: thus ye may order your Vine all the Summer long without any hurt.

To Set or Plant the Cherry.

CHerry-trees, and all the trees of stonefruit, would be planted or set of Cions, in cold grounds and places of good earth, and likewise in high or hilly places, dry and well in the shade: if ye doe remove, ye ought to remove them in *November* and *January*, if ye shall see your Cherry-tree waxe rotten, then shall ye make a hole in the midst of the body two foot above the ground, with a big Piercer, that the humour may passe forth thereby, then afore the Spring shut him up againe with a pinne of the same Tree: thus ye may doe unto all other sorts of trees when they begin to rot, and is also good for them

L

which

which beare scant of fruit or none.

To keepe Cherries good a yeere.

FOr to keepe Cherries good a yeere, ye shall cut off the stalks, and then lay them in a well leaded pot, & fill the said pot therewith, then put into them of good thin Honey, and fill the said pot therewith, then stop it with Clay that no ayre enter in, then set them in some faire Seller, and put of Sand under and all about it, and cover the Pot well withall, so let it stand or remaine; thus ye may keepe them a yeere, as fresh as though they came from the Tree, and after this sort ye may keepe Peares or other fruit.

Against Pismires.

IF ye have Cherry-trees laded or troubled with Pismires or Ants, ye shall rub the body of the Tree, and all about the root with the juyce of Purslane mingled halfe with Vineger. Some doe use to anoint the Tree beneath all about the body with tare and Birds lime, with wooll, oyle boyled together, and anoint the tree beneath therewith, and doe lay the Chalke stones all about the Tree roote, some say it is good therefore.

The Setting of Chesnuts.

THE Chesnut-tree, men doe use to plant like unto the Fig-tree. They may be both planted and grafted well, they waxe well in fresh and fat earth, for in sand they like not. If ye will set the Curnels, ye shall lay them in water untill they doe sinke, and those that doe sinke to the bottome of the water be best to set, which ye shall set in the Moneth of November and December, foure fingers deepe, a foot one from another, for when they be in these two Moneths set or planted they shall endure long and beare also good fruit, yet some there be that plant or set them first in dung, like Beanes, which will be sweeter then the other sort, but those which be set in these two Moneths aforesaid, shall first beare their fruit, men may prove which is best, experience doth teach.

This is another way to prove and know, which Chesnuts be best to plant or set, that is, ye shall take a quantity of nuts, then lay

lay them in Sand the space of thirty dayes, then take and wash them in water faire and cleane, and throw them into water againe and those which doe sinke to the bottome, are good to plant or set, and the other that swimme are naught; thus may ye doe with all other Curnels or Nuts.

To have all stone fruit tast, as ye shall thinke good.

IF ye will have all stone fruit tast as ye shall fanſie or thinke good, ye shall first lay your stones to soke in such licour or moisture, as ye will have the fruit tast of, and then set them, as for the Date tree (as some say) he bringeth no fruit except he be a hundred yeare old, and the Date-stone must soke one Moneth in the water before he be set, then shall ye set him with the small end upward in good fat earth, in hote Sandy ground foure fingers deepe, and when the boughes doe begin to spring, then shall ye every night sprinkle them with raine water, (or other if ye have none) so long till they be come forth and growne.

Of Graffing the Medler and Misphe.

FOR to graffe the Medler or Misphe: men doe use to Graffe them on the White Hathorne Tree, they will prove well, but yet small and sower fruit, to graffe one Medlar upon another is the better, some men doe graffe first the Wilding Cion upon the Medlar stocke, and so when he is well taken and growne, then they graffe thereon the Medlar againe, the which doth make them more sweet, very great and faire.

Of the Fig-tree.

THE Fig-tree in some Country, beareth his fruit foure times a Yeare, the Blacke Figges are the best being dried in the Sunne, and then layed in a Vessell in beddes one by another, and then sprinkled or strawed all over, every lay with fine Meale, then stop it up, and so it is sent out of that Land. If the Fig-tree will not
L 2 bears,

beare, ye shall digge him all about, and under the roots in *February*, and take out then all his earth, and put unto him the dung of a Privie, for that he liketh best: ye may mingle with it of other fat earth, as Pigeons dung mingled with Oyle and Pepper stampd, which shall forward him much to noint his rootes therewith: ye shall not plant the Figge-tree in cold times, he loveth hote, stony, or gravelly ground, and to be planted in *Autumne* is best.

Of the Mulberry-tree.

IF ye will plant the Mulberry-tree, the Fig-tree, or others which bring no seed, ye shall cut a twig or branch (from the tree roote) of a yeares growth, with the old wood or barke, about a cubit long, which ye shall plant or set all in the earth. save a shaftment long to it, and so let it grow, watering it as ye shall see need. This must be done before the leaves begin to Spring, but take heed that ye cut not the end or top above, for then it shall wither and dry.

Of Trees that beare bitter fruit.

OF all such trees as beare bitter fruit, to make them bring sweeter, ye shall uncover all the rootes in *January*, and take out all that earth, then put unto them of Hogs dung great plenty, and then after put unto them of other good earth and so cover them therewithall well againe. and their fruit shall have a sweeter tast. Thus men may doe with other trees which bring bitter fruit.

To helpe barren Trees.

Here is another way to helpe barren Trees, that they may bring fruit, if you see your Tree not beare scantly in three or foure yeares good plenty, ye shall bore an hole with an Auger or Piercer, in the greatest place of the body, (within a yard of the ground) but not through, but unto or past the heart, ye shall bore him a slope: then take honey and water mingled together a night before, then put the said Hony and
water

water into the hole and fill it therewith, then stop it close with a short pinne made of the same Tree, not stricken in too farre for piercing the licour.

An other way.

IN the beginning of Winter, ye shall dig those Trees round about the rootes, and let them so rest a day and a night, and then put unto them of good earth, mingled well with good store of watred Otes, or with watred Barley or Wheat, laid next unto the rootes, then fill it with other good earth, and he shall beare fruit; even as the boring of a hole in the maister roote, and striking in a pinne, and so fill him againe, shall helpe him to beare, as before is declared.

To keepe your Fruit.

ALL fruit may be the better kept if ye lay them in dry places, in dry straw or Hay, but Hay ripeth too soone, or in a Barley-mow, not touching one the other, or in Chasse, or in vessels of Iuniper or Cipers wood: ye may so keepe them well in dry Salt or Hony, and upon boardes, whereas fire is nigh all the Winter, also hanging nigh fire in the Winter, in Nets of yarne.

The Mulberry-tree.

THE Mulberry-tree, is planted or set by the Fig-tree: his fruit is first sowre, and then sweet, he liketh neither Dew nor Raine, for they hurt him, he is wel pleased with foule earth and dung: His branches will waxe dry within every sixe yeares, then must ye cut them off, as for other Trees they ought to be pruned every yeare, as ye shall see cause, and they will be the better, and to plant them from the midst of February, to the midst of March is best.

Of Mosse of the Tree.

OF the Mosse on your Trees, ye must not let it too long be unclensed, ye must rub it off with a grate of wood, or a rough Haire, or such like, in Winter when they be moist

or wet, for then it will off the sooner, for Mosse doth take away the strength and substance of the fruit, and makes the Trees barren at length: when you see your Trees begin to waxe Mossie, ye must in the Winter uncover their rootes, and put under them good earth, this shall helpe them and keepe them long without Mosse: for the earth not stirred about the root, is one cause of Mossinelle, and also the barrenelle of the ground whereon he standeth, and your Mosse doth sucker in Winter, Flies and other Vermin, and so doth therein hide them in Summer, which is occasion of eating the blossomes, and tender Cions thereof.

To keepe Nuts long.

FOr to keepe Nuts long, ye shall dry them, and cover them in dry Sand, and put them in a dry Bladder, or in a Fatte made of Walnut-tree, and put of dry Iuic-berries therein, and they shall be much sweeter. To keepe Nuts Greene a yeare and also fresh, ye shall put them into a pot with Hony, and they shall continue fresh a yeare, and the said Hony will be gentle and good for many Medicines. To keepe Walnuts fresh and Greene: in the time of straining of Verjuyce, ye shall take of the Pommes, and put thereof in the bottome of a Barrell, then lay your Walnuts all over with Pommes over them, and so Walnuts againe, and then of the Pommes, as ye shall see cause to fill your vessell. Then stop it close as ye doe a Barrell, and set him in your Sellar or other place, and it shall keepe your Nuts fresh and Greene a yeare. Some use to fill an earthen Pot with small Nuts, and then put to them dry Sand, and cover them with a liddle of earth, or stone, and then they clay it, setting the mouth of the pot downe-ward two foote within the earth, in their Garden, or other place, and so they will keepe very moist and sweete untill new come.

To cut the Peach-tree.

THe Peach-tree is of this nature, if he be cut (as some say) Greene, it will wither and dry. Therefore if ye cut any
small

small branch, cut it hard by the body: the withered twigs ever as they wither, must be cut off hard by the great branch, or body thereof, for then they doe prosper the better. If a Peachtree doe not like, ye shall put to his rootes, the Lees of Wine mingled with water, and also wash his rootes therewith, and likewise the branches; then cover him againe with good earth mingled with his own leaves, for those he liketh best. Ye may graffe Peach upon Peach, upon Hasell, or Ash, or upon Cherry-tree, or ye may graffe the Almond upon the Peach-tree. And to have great Peaches, ye must take Cowes milke, and put good earth thereto, then all to strike the body of the Tree therewith, both upward and downward, or else open the root all bare, three dayes and three nights; then take Goates milke and wash all the rootes therewith, and then cover them againe; this must be done when they begin to blossome, and so shall he bring great Peaches.

To colour Peach stones.

TO colour Peach-stones that all the fruit thereof shall have the like colour hereafter, that is, ye shall lay or set Peach stones in the earth seven dayes or more, untill ye shall see the stones begin to open, then take the stones and the curnels softly forth thereof, and what color ye will, colour the curnell therewith, and put them into the shell againe, then bind it fast together, and set it in the earth, with the small end upward and so let him grow and all the Peaches which shall come of the same fruit (grafted or ungrafted) will be of the same colour. The Peach-tree ought to be planted in Autumne, before the cold doe come, for he cannot abide the cold.

If Peach-trees be troubled with Wormes.

ALso if any Peach-tree be troubled with wormes, ye shall take two parts of Cow-pisse, with one part of Vineger, then shall ye sprinkle the tree all over therewith, and wash his roots and branches also, and it will kill the wormes; this may ye doe unto all other Trees, which be troubled with Wormes.

To have the Peach without stones.

FOr to make the Peach grow without stones, ye shall take a Peach-tree newly planted, then set a Willow hard by, which ye shall bore a hole through, then put the Peach-tree through the said hole, and so close him on both sides thereof, Sappe to Sappe, and let him so grow one yeare, then the next yeare ye shall cut off the Peach stocke, and let the Willow feed him, and cut off the upper part of the Willow also three fingers high: and the next Winter saw him off nigh the Peach, so that the Willow shall feed but the Peach onely: and this way ye may have Peaches without stones.

Another way for the same.

YE shall take the Graffes of Peaches, and Graffe them upon the Willow stocke, and so shall your Peaches be likewise without stones.

If Trees doe not prosper.

IF ye see that your Trees doe not waxe nor prosper, take and open the rootes in the beginning of Iannary or afore, and in the biggest roote thereof, make an hole with an Auger to the pith or more, then strike therein a pinne of Oke and so stop it againe close, and let it be well waxt all about the pinne, then cover him againe with good earth, and he shall doe well, some doe use to cleave the roote.

*How to graffe Apples, so last on the Tree
till Alhallontide.*

HOW ye may have many sorts of Apples upon your Trees untill Alhallontide, that is, ye shall graft your Apples upon the Mulberry-trees, and upon the Cherry-tree.

*To make Cherries and Peaches smell and
tast like spice.*

HOW to make that Cherries and Peares, shall be pleasant and shall smell and tast like spice, and that ye may keepe them

them well, till the new doe come againe, ye shall graffe them on the Mulberry-tree, as is afore-said: But first ye shall souke them in Hony and Water, wherein ye shall put of the powder of Cloves, Ginger, and Cinamon.

*To graffe an Apple which shall be halfe sweet
and halfe sower.*

TO graffe that your Apples shall be the one halfe sweet, and the other halfe sower, ye shall take two Cions, the one sweet and the other sower, some doe put the one Cion through the other, and so graffes them betweene the barke and the Tree; and some againe doe pare both the Cions finely, and so sets them joyning into the stocke, inclosing Sap to Sap, on both the out-sides of the graffes, unto the out-sides of the stock, and so sets them into the head as the other, and they shall bring fruit, the one halfe sweet and the other halfe sower.

To graffe a Rose on the Holly.

FOR to graffe the Holly, that his leaves shall keepe all the yeare greene; Some doe take and cleave the Holly, and so graffes in a white or red Rose bud, and then put clay and mofe to him, and lets him grow. and some doe put the Rose bud into a slitte of the barke, and so putteth Clay and Mofe and binds him featly therein, and lets him grow, and he shall cary his leafe all the yeare.

Of keeping of Plummes.

OF Plums there be many sorts, as Damsons, which be all blacke and counted the best: All manner of other Plum, a man may keepe well a yeare, if they be gathered ripe, and then dried, and put into Vessels of Glasse: If ye cannot dry them well in the Sunne, ye shall dry them on hurdles of Oziers made like Lattice Windowes, in a hot Oven after Bread is drawne forth, and so reserve them. If a Plum-tree like not, open his rootes, and powre in all about the dregs of Wine mixt with Water, and so cover him well againe, or

powre on them stale Urine or old piſſe of old men, mixt with two parts of water, and ſo cover him as before.

Of altering of Peares, or ſtony fruit.

IF a Peare doe taſt hard or gravelly about the core, like ſmall ſtones, ye ſhall uncover his rootes (in the Winter, or afore the Spring) and take out all the earth thereof, and pricke out all the itones as cleane from the earth as ye can about his root, then ſift that earth, or elſe take of other good fat earth without ſtones, and fill all his rootes againe therewith, and he ſhall bring a ſoft and gentle Peare to eate, but ye muſt ſee well to the watering of him often.

The making of Cyder and Perrie.

OF Apples and Peares, men doe make Cyder and Perry, and becauſe the uſe thereof in moſt places is knowne, I will heere let paſſe to ſpeake any further thereof, but this (in the preſſing your Cyder) I will counſell you to keepe cleane your veſſels, and the places where as your fruit doth lye, and ſpecially after it is bruſed or broken, for then they draw filthy ayre unto them, and if it be nigh the Cyder ſhall be infected therewith, and alſo beare, the taſt after the infection thereof: therefore as ſoone as you can, run it into cleane and ſweet veſſels, as into veſſels of white Wine, or of Sacke, or of Claret, and ſuch like, for theſe ſhall keepe your Cyder the better and the ſtronger a long time after: ye may hang a ſmall bag of linnen b. a threed downe into the lower part of your Veſſell, with Powder of Cloves, Mace, Cinamond, and Ginger, and ſuch like, which will make your Cider to have a pleaſant taſt.

To helpe frozen Apples.

OF Apples that be froz n in the cold and extreame Winter: The remedy to have the life out of them, is this. Ye ſhall lay them firſt in cold water a while. and then lay them before the fire, or other heat, and they ſhall come to themſelves againe.

To make Apples fall from the Tree.

IF ye put of fiery coles under an Apple-tree, and then cast of the powder of Brimstone therein and the fume thereof ascend up, and touch any Apple that is wet, that Apple shall fall incontinent.

To water Trees in Summer if they waxe dry about the Roote.

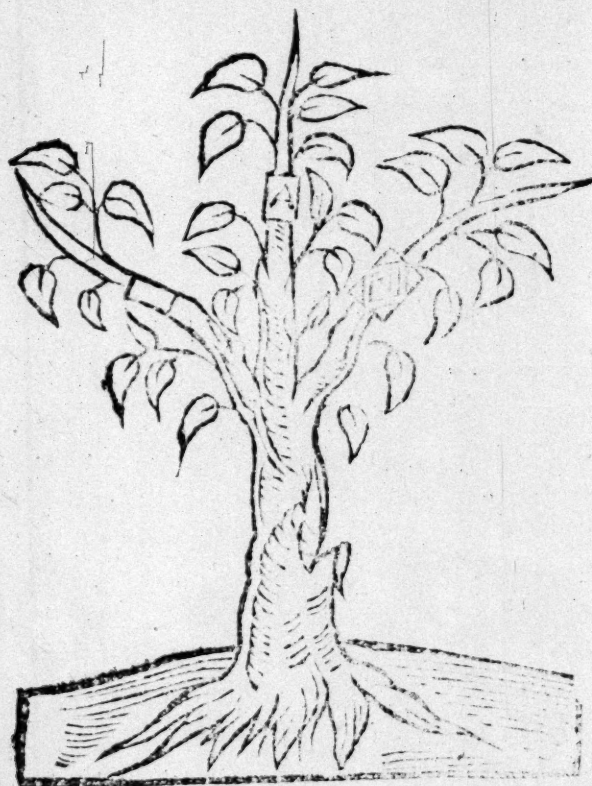
VHereas Apple-trees be set in dry Ground and not dead in the Ground, in Summer if they want moisture ye shall take of Wheat straw, or other, and every evening (or as ye shall see cause) cast thereon water all about, and it will keepe the Trees moist from time to time.

To cherish Apple-trees.

IF ye use to throw (in Winter) all about your Apple-trees on the rootes thereof, the Urine of old men, or stale pisse long kept, they shall bring fruit much better, which is good for the Vine also, or if ye doe sprinkle or annoint your Apple-tree rootes with the Gall of a Bull, they shall beare the better.

To make an Apple grow in a Glasse.

TO make an Apple grow within a Glasse, take a Glasse what fashion ye list, and put your Apple therein when he is but small, and bind him fast to the Glasse, and the Glasse also to the Tree, and let him grow, thus ye may have Apples of divers proportions, according to the fashion of your Glasse. Thus may ye make of Cucumbers, Gourdes, or Pomecitrons the like fashion.



THese three branches and figure of grafting in the shield in summer is, the first branch sheweth how the barked is taken off, the middle place sheweth, how it is set too, and the last branch sheweth how to bind him on, in saving the oyle or eye from bruising.

To graffe many sorts of Apples on one Tree.

YE may graffe on one Apple-tree at once, many kind of Apples, as on ever, branch a contrary fruit, as is afore declared, and of Peares the like; but see as high as you can, that all your Cions be of like springing, for else the one will not grow and that sow the other.

To colour Apples.

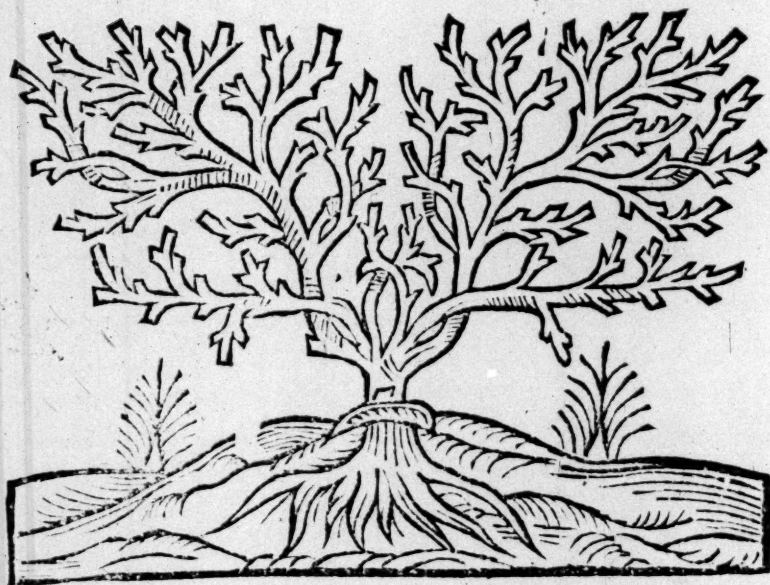
TO have coloured Apples, with what colour ye shall thinke good, ye shall bore slope a hole with an Auger, in the biggest part of the body of the Tree, unto the middle thereof,
or

or thereabouts, and then look what colour ye will have them of. First ye shall take water, and mingle your colour therewith, then stop it up againe with a short pinne made of the same wood or tree; then waxe it round about; ye may mingle with the said colour what space ye list, to make them tast thereafter: thus may ye change the colour and tast of any Apple. Your colours may be of Saffron, Turke soule, Brasse, Saunders, or other what ye shall see good. This must be done before the Spring doe come: Some doe say, if ye graffe on the Olive stocke, or on the Alder stocke, they will bring red Apples. Also they say, to graffe to have them without core, ye shall graffe in both the ends of your Cion into the stocke, and when they be fast growne to the stocke ye shall cut it in the midst; and let the smaller end grow upward, or else take a Cion and graffe the small end of the stocke downward, and so shall ye have your Apple-tree on St. *Lamberts* day (which is the xvii of September) they shall never wast, consume, nor waxe dry, which I doubt.

The setting of Vine Plants.



THese figures doe shew how ye ought to plant and set your Vines, in two and two together, the one to have a part for the old Tree, and the other may be all of the last Cion, but when ye plant him with a part of the old tree, he shall commonly take root sooner then the new Cion; ye must weed them every moneth, and let not the earth be too close above their rootes at the first, but now and then lose it with a spade as ye shall see a raine past, for then they shall endure, and grow forth better. Further herein ye shall understand after.

How to proyne or cut a Vine in Winter.

THIS Figure sheweth, how all Vines should be proined and cut, in a convenient time after *Christmas*, that when ye cut them, ye shall leave his branches very thinne, as ye see by this figure, ye shall never leave above two or three leaders at the head of any principal branch, ye must also cut them off in the middest betweene the knots of the young Cions, for those be the leaders which will bring the Grape, the rest and order ye shall underitand as followeth.

Of the Vine and Grape.

Somewhat I intend to speake of the ordering of the Vine and Grape. to plant or set the Vine: the Plants or Sets which be gathered from the Vine (and so planted) are best, they must not be old gathered nor lye long unplanted after they be cut, for then they will soon gather corruption, and when ye do gather your Plants ye must take heed to cut & chose them, where as ye may with the yong Cion, a joynt of the old wood
with

with the new, for the old wood will soone take root then the new, and better to grow then if it were all young Cion, ye shall leave the old wood to the young Cion, a foote or halfe a foote, or a shaftment long, the young Cion ye shall cut the length of three quarters of a yard or thereabouts, and yee shall choose of those young Cions that be thickest joynted, or nigh joynts together, and when ye shall Plant or set them, looke that your ground be welldigged in the winter before, then in *January* ye may both cut and plant, but cut not in the Frost, for that is danger of all kind of trees, or yee may plant in the beginning of *February*, and when ye doe plant, ye shall take two of those plants, and set or lay them together, a foote deepe in the earth, for two plants set together will not so soone fall, as one alone, and lay them a foote longwise in the earth, so that there may be aboue the earth three or foure joynts: ye may plant a young Cion with the old, so that it be thicke or nigh joynted, for then he is the better to roote, and also to bring fruit: then when ye haue set or layed them in the earth, then cover them well therewith, in treading it fast downe unto the plants, but let the ends of your Cions or Plants be turned upright, aboue the earth, three or foure joynts, if there shall be more when they be set, ye shall cut them off, and ye shall cut them alwayes in the midst betweene the two joynts, and then let them so grow, and see that ye weed them alwayes cleane, and once a moneth loose the earth round about them and they shall proue the better, If it be very dry and hot in the Summer after, ye may water them, in making a hole with a crow of Iron to the roote and there ye shall powre in water in the evening. As for the prouning of them is, when the Grape is taken and clustered, then ye may brake the next joynt or two fier the Grape, of all such superfluous Cions as ye shall see cause, which will cause the Grape to waxe bigger: Ye may also breake away all superfluous buddes or slender branches, which cometh about the roote, or on the under branches, which ye thinke will haue no Grape, and when ye proue or cut

in the Winter following, ye shall not cut the yong Cion right the old, by three or foure joynts, ye shall not cut them like Ouzers, to leave a foot or heads together on the branch, which doth kill your Vine, ye shall leave but one head, or two at the most, of the young Cions upon the old branch, and to cut those yong Cions three or foure knots or joynts of, for the yong Cion doth carry the Grape alwayes, and when ye leave upon a great branch many Cions, they cannot be well nourished, and after ye have to cut them in Winter, ye shall bind them with Ouzers, in placing those yong branches as ye shall see cause, and in the Spring time, when the branches are tender ye shall bind them so, that the stormy tempest or wind do not hurt them, and to bind them with hail, the best is, great soft Rushes and when the Grape is clustered, then ye may breake off all such branches as is afore declared, upon one old branch three or foure heads be enough, for the more heads your branch hath, the worse your Grape shall be nourished, and when ye cut off any branch, cut him or hard by or nigh the old branch; if your Vine waxe old, the best remedy is, if there grow any young Cion about the root, ye shall in the Winter cut off the old Vine hard by the ground, or as nigh as ye can and let the young Vine lead, and he will continue a long time, if ye cover and fill the place about the roote with good Earth againe. There is also upon or by every cluster of Grapes, a small Cion like a Pigs Talle, turning about, which doth take away the Sap from the Grape, if ye pinch it off hard by the st like of your Grape, your fruit shall be the greater. If your Vine waxe too ranke and thicke of branches, ye shall digge the root in Winter and open the earth, and fill it up againe with Sand and Ashes mingle together, and whereas a Vine is unfertill and doth not beare ye shall bore a hole (with an Anger) unto the heart or pith, in the body or thickest part thereof, then put in the said hole a small stone, but fill not the hole close therewith, but so that the sicknes of the Vine may passe thereby. Then lay all about the roote of good earth mingled with
good

good Dung, and so shall he not be unfruitfull, but beare well ever after : or also, to tast of old mens urine or pissle, all about the roote of the barren Vine, and if he were halie lost or mard he should grow againe and waxe fruitfull as before : This is to be done in Winter.

To have Grapes without stones.

FOR to have Grapes without stones, ye shall take young Plants or Branches, and shall set or plant the top or small end downward in the earth, and so ye may set two of them together for failing, as I have afore declared of the others, and these branches shall bring Grapes without stones.

To make your Vine to bring a Grape to tast like Claret.

TO make your Vine to have a Grape, to tast like Claret Wine, and pleasant withall : ye shall bore a hole in the stock unto the hart, or pith thereof, then shall ye make a Lectuary with the Powder of Cloves, of Cinamond mingled with a little Fountaine or running water, and fill the said hole therewith and stop it fast and close with waxe, and so bind it fast thereon with a Linnen cloth, and these Grapes shall tast like Claret-wine.

Of gathering your Grapes.

ALL Grapes that men doe cut, before they are through ripe, the Wine shall not be naturall, nor yet shall long endure good : But if ye will cut or gather Grapes, to have them good, and to have good Wine thereof, ye shall cut them in the Full, or soone after the full of the Moone, when she is in Cancer; in Leo, in Scorpio, and in Aquarius the Moone being in the waine and under the earth.

To know if your Grape be ripe enough.

FOR to know if your Grape be ripe enough, or not, which ye shall not onely know in the tast, but in sight and tast together, as in tast if they be sweete, and full

in eating, and in sight, if the stone will soone fall out being chafed or bruised which is the best knowledge, and also whether they be white or blew, it is all one matter : The good Grape is he, which commeth out all watry, or those which be all clammy as Bird-lime : by these signes ye shall know when to cut, being through ripe or not, and whereas you doe presse your Wine, ye must make your place sweet and cleane and your Vessels within to be cleane also, and see that they have strong heads, and those persons which doe presse the Grape, must looke their hands, feet and body be cleane washed, when as they goe to presse the Grape, and that no woman be there having her termes : And also ye shall eat of no Chebols, Scallions, Onions, or Garlike, Anniseeds, or such like : For all strong favours your Wine will draw the infection thereof, and as soone as your Grape is cut and gathered, you shall presse your Wine after, as soone as ye may, which will make your Wine to be more pleasant and stronger, for the Grapes which tarmeth long unpresse, maketh the Wine to be small and ill ; ye must see that your vessels be new, and sweet within, and to be washed with sweet water, and then well dried againe, and to perfume them with Masticke, and such sweet vapour, and if your Vessell chance not to be sweet, then shall ye pitch him on the sides, which pitch will take away all evill, and such stinking savour therein.

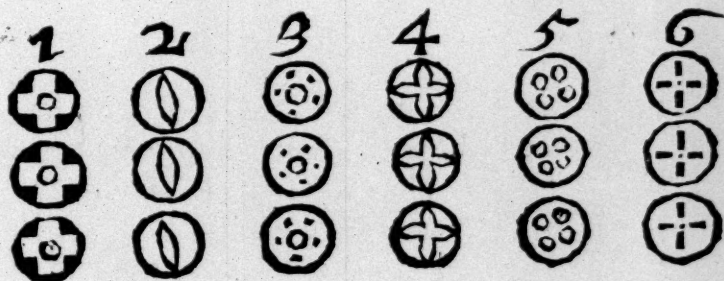
To prove or tast Wine.

ANd whensoever ye will prove or tast any Wine, the best time is, early in the Morning, and take with you three or foure sops of bread, then dippe one after another into the Wine, for therein ye shall find (if there be any) sharpe tast of the Wine. Thus I leave (at this present) to speake any further here of the Wine and Grape.

If this my simple labour be taken in good part (Gentle Reader) it shall the more hereafter encourage me, to set forth another Booke more at large, touching the Art of Planting and Grasting, with other things necessary to be knowne.

Heere

*Heere followeth the best times how to order or
choose, and to Set or Plant
Hoppes.*



IN this figure ye shall understand, the placing and making
of Hoppe hills, by every Sipher over his head. the first
place is shewed, but one Pole set in the middest, and the Hop
beneath: The second sheweth, how some doth chop downe
a Spade in the middest of the Hills, and therein layes his Hop
rootes. The third place sheweth, how other some doe set out
one Pole in the middest, and the Hop rootes at holes put in
round about. The fourth place sheweth, how some chops in a
Spade crosse in the top, and there layes in his rootes. The fifth
place sheweth, how some doe set foure Poles therein, and puts
the Hop round about the Hill. The sixth place sheweth, that
some use to make crosse-holes in the sides, and there layes in
the Hoprootes. Thus many practises have beene proved
good: Proved alwayes, that your Hills be of good fat earth,
specially in the middest downe unto the bottome. This I
thought sufficient to shew by this figure, the diversity in set-
ting, whereof the laying of the Hop is counted the surest
way.

THe best and common setting time of Hoppes, is from the
middest of November, to the midst of February, then
must

must ye dig and cleane the ground of weeds, and mixe it well with good mould and fat earth. Then deuide your Hills a yard one from another orderly, in making them a yard a funder, and two foot and a halfe broad in the bottome, and when that ye plant them, ye shall lay in every Hill three or foure rootes: Some doe in setting of them lay them crosse-wise in the midst of the Hill, and so covers them againe: some sets the rootes in fours parts of the Hill, other some doe make holes round about the hills, and puts of the rootes therein, and so covers them againe light with earth: of one short roote in a yeare ye may have many plants, to set and lay as ye shall see it good, and it shall be sufficient for every plant, to have two knots within the ground, and one without: then some doe chop a Spade crosse into the Hill, and layes in crosse Hop, and so covers it.

To choose your Hopps.

YE shall choose your rootes best for your Hop, in the Summer before ye shall plant them, for then ye shall see which beares the Hop, for some there is that brings none, but that which beares, choose for your plants, and set of those in your Hills, for so shall ye not be deceived and they shall prosper well.

To sow the Seeds.

SOME doe hold, that ye may sow among other Seeds, the Seeds of Hops, and they will encrease and be good to set, or else to make beds, and sow them alone, whereby they may encrease to be set, and when they be strong, ye may remove and set them in your Hills, and plant them as the other before mentioned.

The Setting your Poles.

THe best time is in *April*, or when your rootes be sprung halfe a yard long or more, then by every Plant or Hop in your hills, ye shall set up a Pole of xiii. or xiiii. foot long, or thereabouts, as cause shall require. Some doe use to set but
foure

four Poles in every Hill, which is thought sufficient, and when ye shall set them, see that ye set them so fast that great Winds doe not cast them downe.

How to proyne the Hop-tree.

YE shall marke when the Hop doth blossom, and knit in the top, which shall be perceived to be the Hop, then take and cut up all the rest growing thereabouts (not having Hop thereon) hard by the earth, that all those which carry the Hop might be the better nourished: thus shall ye doe in Summer as ye shall see them encrease and grow, untill the time of gathering.

To gather the Hoppe.

AT such time afore *Michaelmasse*, as ye shall see your hop waxe browne, or somewhat yellow, then he is best to be gathered in a dry day, in cutting your hop by the ground, then pluck up your Pole therewith for shaking of your hop, so carry them into some dry house and when ye have so pluckt them, ye shall lay them on boarded lofts, or on burdels of cloathes, that the wind may dry them, and the ayre, but not in the Sun, for the same will take away the strength thereof, nor with fire, for that will doe likewise, and ye shall daily tolle and turn them till they be dry: to try them when they are dry, hold them in your hand a space, and if they cleave together when ye open your hand, they are not then dry; but if they shatter a sunder in opening your hand, then ye may be sure they are dry enough. It not let them remaine, and use ye them as is before said. Ye shall understand the drynesse of them is to preserve them and long to last, but if need be, ye may occupy them well and yed, with lesse portion to sow.

What Poles are best.

YE shall prepare your Poles of such Wood as is light and stiffe, and which will not bow with every Wind, the best and meetest time to get them is in Winter, when the Sap is

gone downe, and as soone as ye have taken of your Hop, lay your Poles in sundry places untill the next Spring, whereby they may endure the longer.

How to order and dresse your Hills.

After the first yeare is past, your Hop being increased to more plenty of rootes in your Hills, ye shall after *Michaelmasse* every yeare open your Hills, and cast downe the tops unto the roots, uncovering them, and cut away all the superfluous rootes, some doth plucke away all the rootes that spreades abroad without the Hills, then opens the Hills and puts of good new earth unto them, and so covers them again, which shall keepe them from the Frost, and also make the ground fat, so shall ye let them remaine unto the Spring of the yeare in *February* or *March*, then againe if ye shall see any superfluous rootes, ye may take them away, and cut them up and your Hop shall be the better, then againe cast up the earth about your Hills, and cleansing them from all weeds and other rootes, which will take away their strength, if the hearbes remaine, so let them rest till your Pole may be set therein.

Of ground best for your Hoppe.

THe Hop delighteth and loveth a good and reasonable fat ground, not very cold, nor yet too moist, for I have seene them prove well in *Flanders*, in dry Sandy fields, the Hop-hills being, of good fat earth, ye may (as some say) for great need make your Hop grow and beare on any kind of Rockie ground, so that your Hills be great and fat earth, but the lower ground commonly proveth best, so that it stand well and hot in the Sunne.

A Note of the rest above-said.

YE shall marke and understand, all this order above said, is to have many Hops and good, with a few rootes and Plants placed in a small plot of ground. Ye shall understand, that wild Hoppe that groweth in the hedges is as good to occupie as the other to set or plant, in any other places but look
that

that ye take not the barren Hoppe to plant, some Hoppe will be barren for want of good earth, and lacke of good dressing which ye shall perceive (as I have told you) in the Summer before, that when they should beare they will be barren, which is for want of good fat earth, or an vnkind yeare, or lacke of weeding and good ordering. Therefore such as are minded to bestow labour on the ground, may have as good Hoppe growing in this country, as is in other countries: but if ye will not goe to that cost to make Hoppe yards, ye may with a light charge have hops grow in your hedge-rows, to serve as well as the other, and shall be as good for the quantity as the other in all respects: ye may (for lacke of ground) plant Hoppe rootes in Hedge-rows, when ye doe quicke set, set up Poles by them when time shall require in the Spring and to bestow every winter after the gathering your Hoppe, on every hill head, a shovell full of dung to comfort the earth for then will they beare the more plenty of Hoppes the next yeare following. To conclude, you that have Grounds may well practise in all things afore-mannered, and specially to have Hops in this ordering, for your selves, and others: also ye shall give encouragement for others to follow hereafter, I have heard by credible persons, which have knowne a hundred Hills, (which is a small plot of Ground) to beare three hundred pound of Hoppes, so that the commodity is much and the gaine great: and one pound of our Hops dryed and ordered, will goe as farre as two pound of the best Hops that cometh from beyond the Seas. Thus much I thought meet, and necessary to write, of the ordering and planting of the Hoppe.

How to packe your Hoppes.

VVhen your Hops be well tolled and turned on boarded Rowes, and well dryed (as I afore have shewed) ye shall put them into great Sackes, according to the quantity of your Hoppes, and let them be troden downe hard together, which will keepe their strength longer, and so ye may reserve

serve them, and take at your pleasure. Some doe use (which have but small store) to tread them into dry Fattes, and so serve them for their use, which is counted the better way, and the lesse portion doth serve, and will longer keepe their vertue and strength.

*Wishing long life and prosperous Health,
To all furtherers of this Common-wealth.*

Ff N S.



HEERE

A
PERFECT
PLATFORME
OF A HOPPE-
GARDEN.

And necessary Instructions for the
making and maintenance thereof, with
Notes and Rules for reformation of all
abuses, commonly practised therein,
very necessary and expedient
for all men to have,
which in any wise
have to doe with
Hoppes.

PROVERB. II.

Who so laboureth after goodnesse, findeth his desire.



LONDON.

Printed by B. ALLSOP and T. FAVVET, and are to be
sold by MICHAEL YOUNG, at his Shop in Beaford-
street in Coven-garden neere the New
Exchange. 1640.

1119

1119

1119

1119

1119

1119

1119

1119

1119

1119

1119

1119

1119

1119

1119

1119

1119

1119

1119

1119

9



A PERFECT PLAT- FORME OF A HOPPE Garden.



At what time necessity, or any other good consideration shall move you to devise for a Hop Garden, you are to consider of these three things.

First, whether you have, or can procure unto your selfe any Ground good for that purpose.

Secondly, of the convenient standing thereof.

Thirdly, of the quantity.

And this I say by the way, if the ground that you deale withall, be not your own inheritance, procure unto your selfe some certaine terme therein, lest another man reape the fruit of your travaile and charge.

Of apt and unapt Ground for Hoppes.

Some hold at this day: (and ancient Writers witnesse the same) that earth being salt, and bitter of tast, is neither good, nor apt to be made good. *Virgiliana*

It is also often written, and generally received, that such earth as you shall see white and bare (that is to say) wholly
O 2 chalke,

*Didymus.
Plinius.*

chalke, or all sand lacking a mixture of perfect earth, or if it be clay, or so dry, as thereby it shall gape or coane in the Summer, is nought for this or any like purpose.

It is further said, that if you shall feele a clod (being dissolved with water) to be very clammy, or cleaving like Waxe to your fingers in kneading it, the same to be profitable land, &c.

J for my part rely not upon other mens opinions, neither meane to dispute with any man herein, J like not to make my mouth an arbitrater in this matter, mine eye may be deceived and my feeling may erre in the precise distinction of good or bad land, but mine experience hath never failed in this thing (that is to say) that a barren, a moory, or wet soyle (though it perhaps doe content a wild Hoppe) shall never please nor maintaine a good Hoppe.

I will not say with *Varro*, that a good ground yeeldeth Walwoorts, nor with *Collumella*, that where Crabs or slowes grow, there the ground is rich. J can say nothing of *Florentines* experience in digging a hole, and filling it up againe, and by the swelling to judge the strength, or by the gaping to define the weaknesse thereof; but J can say againe by sure experience, that a dry ground, if it be rich, mellow, and gentle, is the soyle that serveth best for this purpose, and such a mould must either be sought out, or else by cost and labor be provoked.

If it be a very shallow rocke (except you raise it with greet or good earth) you shall not set your Poles deepe, steddly and fast enough, to withstand the force of the wind.

But to redresse the convenience hereof, you shall be taught in the tytle of Poales.

A light mould (though it be very rich) is not very apt for this purpose, for it is a received and a proved rule, that the heaviest ground will beare the most weight of Hops, I say, so as it be a ground apt for this purpose.

Of the Scituation.

IT were good to place your Garden so as the Sun may have free recourse into it, either the whole day, or the greatest and warmest

warmest part thereof, so also as it may be armed against the violence and contagion of the wind ; but thus I would wish to be considered rather in the situation of the place, naturally defended with hills, then artificially be set and garded with Trees. Howbeit, if you be driven hereunto, provide so (if you can) that your trees may stand aloofe, even that the shadow of them, reach not into your Garden, but in any wise that they drop not upon the hills.

There be many which (to purchase the favour and benefit of the Sunne) lay their Gardens very open and bleake to the South, the which I would not wish to be done, for as the forepart of the yeare admitteth into your Garden the cold Easterly winds, whereby insue frosts, the which ingenders Blasts, &c. So the latter part of the yeare maketh it subject to Southerly stormes, the which doe much annoy a Hoppe Garden when the Poles are loaden with Hops, and then commonly no other wind hurteth.

It should also be placed neare to your house, except you be able to warrant the fruit thereof from such fingers as put no difference betweene their owne and other mens goods.

Also your Garden being thus placed, there may be made thereunto the more speedy and continuall recourse, besides that, that the Masters eye shall many times withstand and prevent the Servants negligence.

By this meanes it may be with most ease and least charge holpen with Dung.

Finally (if it may be). let it not stand bleake to the East, West, North, or specially to the South.

Of the quantity.

THe quantity of your Garden, must either be measured by the proportion of your yearely expences of Hoppes in your house, or by the cost you meane to bestow in the preparation and keeping thereof, or by the paines and businesse that you are disposed, or able to employ upon it, or else according to the profite and gaines, that you meane to levie and

and winne by it, which later consideration pleaseth and flatteth much a covetous mans conceit, whose vaine or humour, (or rather vaine humour) is so resisted in the rules appertaining hereunto, as many times the greedinesse of his desire is the overthrow of his purpose, as shall hereafter appeare.

A proportion of the charge and benefite of a Hoppe Garden.

BUt to be resolved in all these points that concerne the quantity of your Garden, you must make your account in this wise. One man may well keepe two thousand hills, and yet reserve his Winters labour for any other purpose.

Vpon every Acre you may erect seaven, eight, or nine hundred hills, as hereafter shall be declared.

Vpon every hill well ordered, you shall have three pounds of Hops at the least.

Two pounds and a halfe of these Hops will largely serve for the bruing of one quarter of Mault.

One hundred pounds of these Hops, are commonly worth xxvi. shillens viii. pence. So as one Acre of Ground, and the third part of one mans labour, with small cost besides, shall yeeld unto him that ordereth the same well, forty Markes yearly, and that for ever.

And here is to be noted, that ground orderly used, doth not onely yeeld the more, the greater, the harder, and the weightier Hops, but also they shall go further, they shall endure longer, they shall be holesomer for the body, and pleasanter of verdure or tast, then such as be disorderly handled. And in the favour of the Hop thus much more I say, that whereas you cannot make above eight or nine gallons of indifferent Ale out of one bushell of Mault, you may draw xviii. or xx. gallons of very good Beere, neither is the Hoppe more profitable to enlarge the quantity of your drinke, then necessary to prolong the continuance thereof. For if your Ale may endure a fortnight, your Beere through the benefit of the Hop shall continue a Moneth, and what grace it yeeldeth to the tast, all men may

may judge that have sence in their mouthes, and if the controu-
verſie be betwixt Beere and Ale, which of them two ſhall have
the place of preheminence: it ſufficeth for the glory and com-
mendation of the Beere, that here in our owne country, Ale
giveth place unto it, and that moſt part of our Countrymen
doe abhorre and abandon Ale, as a lothſome drinke, whereas
in other Nations Beere is of great eſtimation, and of ſtrangers
entertained as their moiſt choice and delicate drinke. Finally,
that Ale which is moſt delicate and of beſt account, boroweth
the Hoppe, as without the which it wanteth his chiefe grace
and beſt verdure.

Theſe things conſidered, you may proceed to the making
of your Garden, wherein you are yet to have counſell, for the
laying out thereof, for the due ſeaſon and the right trade to
cut and ſet Hoppe rootes, what choice ye ſhall make of them,
what charge you ſhall be at for them, you are yet alſo to learn
the time, when, and the way how to prepare your ground, and
to make it able to entertaine and nourish them, to frame your
hills, to maintaine them, and to pull them downe, to cut, to
faſhion, to erect, to pull up, and to preſerve your Poales, to ga-
ther, to dry, and to pack your Hops, with many other circum-
ſtances neceſſarily appertaining hereunto. Finally, ye muſt be
taught the reformation of many enormities and abuſes which
are received in moſt places for good rules, the which (God
willing) I will ſet forth truly according to the notes of expe-
rience, although not learnedly after the Rules of Rhetoricke.

Of the preparation of a Hoppe Garden.

YOU muſt lay forth the ground which you determine to im-
ploy this way, in as levell, ſquare, and uniforme wiſe as
you may.

If your ground be graſſie, rough, or ſtiſſe, it ſhould be firſt
trowne with Hempe, or Beanes, which naturally maketh the
ground mellow, deſtroyeth weeds, and nevertheleſſe leaveth
the ſame in good ſeaſon for this purpoſe.

But in what plight or ſtate ſoever your ground be, tyll it
in

in the beginning of Winter with the Plough, if it be great, or with the Spade if it be small, and this doe, not onely the yeare before you plant it, but also every yeare after, even so long as you meane to receive the uttermost commodity of your Garden, assuring your selfe that the more paines you take, and the more cost you bestow hereupon, the more you do double your profite, and the nearer you resemble the trade of the Flemming.

Howbeit in some cases these paines may be spared (that is to say) where the mould is not deepe, and the hill made both good and great, in this case (I say) the hills being pulled downe, the earth contained in them, will cover the whole Garden, and all the weeds growing therein, and the same shall with helpe of dung maintaine your hills for ever.

The time to cut and set Hoppe Rootes.

IN the end of *March*, or in the beginning of *Aprill*, repaire to some good Garden orderly kept, as wherein the Hops are all of a good kind, all yearly cut, and wherein all the Hills are raised very high, (for there the rootes will be greatest) then compound with the owner or keeper thereof for choise rootes, which in some places will cost sixe pence an hundreth, but commonly they shall be given unto you, so as you cut them your selfe, and leave every hill orderly and fully dressed, but what order you shall use herein, I will hereafter shew.

Rules for the choyce and preparation of Rootes.

ANd now you must choose the biggest roots you can find (that is to say) such as are in bignesse three or foure inches about.

And let every roote which you shall provide to set, be nine or tenne inches long.

Let there be contained in every such Roote, three joynts.

Let

Let all your rootes be but the Springs of the yeare last past.

You must have great regard that you cumber not your Garden with wild Hops, the which are not to be discerned from the good, by the rootes, but either by the fruit, or by the stalke.

Of the good Hoppe.

THe good and the kindly Hoppe beareth a great and a Greene stalke, a large, a hard and a Greene bell, it appeareth out of the ground naked without leaves, untill it be halfe a foote long.

Of the unkindly Hoppe.

THe Hoppe that likes not his entertainment, namely his seate, his ground, his keeper, his dung, or the manner of his setting, &c. commeth up Greene and small in stalke, thicke and rough in leaves, very like unto a Nettle, which will be commonly devoured, or much bitten with a little blacke Flye, who also will doe harme unto good Hops where the Garden standeth bleake, or the Hop springeth rath, but be not discomforted herewith, for the heate of the Summer will reforme this matter, and the latter springs will be little annoyed with this Flye, who (though she leave the leafe as full of holes as a Net) yet she seldome proceedeth to the utter destruction of the Hoppe.

Of the wilde Hoppe.

OF the wild Hop, the fruit is either altogether seed, or else loose and red light bells, the stalke is red, howbeit, herein the difference betweene the good and the bad Hop is not to be discerned, untill the stalke be two or three yards high, for at their first comming up, the one as well as the other appeareth red, and the best Hoppe is then the reddest.

Provide your rootes therefore, where you are before-hand assured of their goodnesse.

Of setting of Hoppe Rootes.

HAVING made your provision of rootes in this wise, returne therewith to your Garden speedily, and either let them immediately, or lay them in some Puddle neare thereunto, or bury them in the ground untill conveniency of wind, weather, and leisure (the want whereof may sometimes prevent good expedition) shall serve. Provided alwayes that you leave them not in water or puddle above xxiii. houres, but in the earth you may leave them as long as the time of setting endureth, that is to say, till the middelt of *Aprill*.

Your Garden being dressed, as before I advise you, it shall be easie for you to direct your hills aright, and that in equall distance with a Poale, or rather with a line (that will not stretch) tying thereupon short threds, or placing in it pinnes, according to the proportion of space which you meane to leave betweene your hills, whereof if one be placed out of order, it shall blemish and hurt a great part of your Garden.

The distance of the Hills.

IF your Garden be one Acre in bignesse, and 1yc square, leave betweene every hole three yards, or eight foot at the least in space, as well that the hills may be made the greater, and that the Hops of one Pole reach not to another, as also that the Sunne may the more freely and universally passe through your Garden, which by this meanes may yearly be ploughed betwixt the Hills, whereas otherwise it must be digged, which is a more tedious and costly businesse.

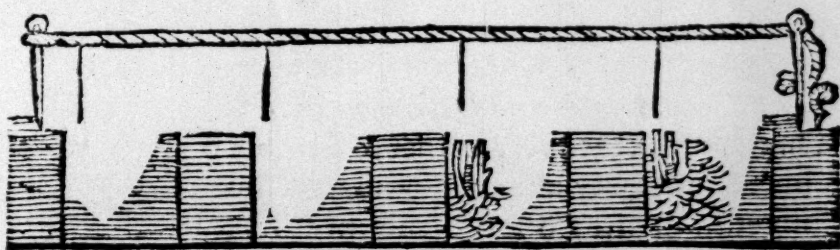
If your Garden be very little, you may set the hills somewhat nearer together, namely, seaven foote asunder.

A Description of the Line.

YOUR line being laid levell, you must digge underneath every thred or pinne placed upon the same, a hole like a Pitfall,

fall, one foote square, and one foote deepe.

When you have made twenty or thirty holes, take up so many rootes; from where you bestowed them, as ought to be set therein, and goe to work on this wise, alwayes watching a time (if you may) that the wind be in some part pf the South or West, but be not so scrupulous herein, that you overslip the moneth of *Aprill*, least *Salomons* saying, be spoken of you: *He that regardeth the Wind shall not sow, and he that hath respect to the Clouds shall not reape.* For he that neglecteth the Moneth of *Aprill*, shall have a bad season to cut or plant Hops.



Take two or three of your rootes (which by this time will yeeld forth greene sciences or white buds, and will also have small rootes or beards growing out of them, the which must be, all saving the smaller sort of white buds, pared away by the old roote) joyne them close together, so as (in any wise) they may be even in the tops: set them also together bolt upright, directly under the foresaid thred or pinne, holding them hard together with one hand, while you fill the hole with the other with fine mould prepared and made ready before hand, regarding that the tops of the rootes be levell with the face or uppermost part of the ground.

Take good heed also that you set not that end downeward, that grew before upward, which you shall know by the buds that appeare in the knots of each roote, and let no part of the dead remaine upon the uppermost part of the joynt thereof.

And when you have thus done, presse downe the earth with your foote hard to the rootes, not treading upon them, but

driving the loose earth close to the corner where the rootes are set.

And here is to be noted, that the readiest and evenest way, is alwayes to set your rootes at one certaine corner of the hole, which corner should alwayes be right underneath the said pinne or thred, as is afore shewed.

At this time you must make no hill at all, but onely cover the tops of your rootes about two inches thicke, with the finest mould you can get.

When you are driven to set your rootes late, if there be any greene springs upon them, you may take the advantage thereof, leaving the same spring uncovered, otherwise you both destroy the spring, and endanger the roote.

Abuses and Disorders in Setting.

Some use to set at every corner of the hole one roote, but this is a naughty and a tedious trade, because a man shall be longer in dressing one of these, then about foure other. To be short, you shall this way so cumber both your selfe and your Garden, that you will soone be weary with working, and your Garden as soone weary of bearing.

Some wind them, and set both ends upward, and herein both the cunning of the workman, and the goodnesse of the rootes, are together very lively expressed, for if the roots were good, they could not be so wound, or if the workman were skilfull, he would not be so fond to set them in that order.

Some use to lay them thwart or flat, but I say flatly that the same is an overthwart and preposterous way, for they can neither prosper well, (as being set contrary to their nature and kind of growing) nor be kept as they ought to be.

Some use to make hills, and then set their rootes therein, but these conclude themselves from ministring succor unto them at any time after, besides many incoveniences hereby ensuing.

Some set their rootes, and then bury them with a great hill made upon them, and this is all one with the other, saving that the hill so choketh these, as most commonly they grow not at all.

Finally,

Finally, there be as many evill wayes to set, as there be ignorant men to devise.

*Provision against annoyance, and spoyle of
your Garden.*

IF your Garden be small, and very nigh to your house, you may arme every hill with a few thornes to defend them from the annoyance of Poultry, which many times will scape and bath among the hills, and so discover & hurt the springs, but a Goose is the most noysome vermine that can enter into this Garden, for (besides the Allegory that may be applyed in this case) a Goose will knabble upon every young science or Hop bud, that appeareth out of the ground, which never will grow afterwards, and therefore as well to avoid the Goose, as other noysome cattell, let your closure be made strong, and kept tight.

Of Poles.

IT remaineth that I speake now of Poles, because Poaling is the next worke now to be done.

If your hills be distant three yards asunder, provide for every hill foure Poles, if you will make your hills nearer together, three Poles shall suffice.

And note that in the first yeare you may occupy as many Poles as in any yeare after, the reason whereof I will declare in the title of Hills.

Alder Poles are best for this purpose, as whereunto the Hops seeme most willingly and naturally to encline, because both the fashion of these Poles being as a Taper, small above, and great below, and also the roughnesse of the Alder-ryne, stayeth the Hop stalke more firmly from sliding downe, than either Ash or Oke, which for continuance be somewhat better, howbeit, these with the order that I shall prescribe, will endure fixe or seaven yeares.

These are also best cheape, and easiest to be gotten in most places, and soonest growne ready for this purpose.

There is in the Springs of these, least danger in growing, or in being destroyed, or bitten by cattell.

Finally, by the expence of these, there ensueth the least annoyance to the Common-wealth, as well for the causes aforesaid, as also because they grow not in so great quantity, to so good tyMBER, nor for so many purposes as either Oke or Althe.

The best time to cut your Poles, is betweene *Alhallontide* and *Christmas*, but you must p^lae them up immediately after they are cut, sharped, reformed in length, and smoothed, least they rot before you occupy them.

You may not leave any scraggs upon them, the reason whereof you shall conceive in the title of gathering Hops.

Your Poles may not be above xv. or xvi. foote long at the most, except your ground be very rich, or that you added therunto great labour in raising up your hills, or else except your hills stand too neare together: if any of these chance to be, or if all these three things meet in one Garden, the best way of reformation, is to set the fewer Poles to a hill, or to let them remaine the longer. Otherwise the Hops will grow from one Pole to another, and so over-shadow your Garden, the fault thereof being especially to be imputed to the nearnesse of the hills. Therefore chiefly you must measure your Poles by the goodnesse of your ground.

The Hoppe never stocketh kindly, untill it reach higher then the Pole, and returne from it a yard or two, for whilst it tendeth clyming upward, the branches which grow out of the principall stalke (wherein consisteth the abundance of increase) grow little or nothing.

Let the quantity of your Poles be great (that is to say) nine, or tenne inches about the lower end, so shall they endure the longer, and withstand the wind the better.

To describe the price of Poles, or what it will cost you to furnish a Garden containing one Acre of ground, it were a hard matter, because the place altereth the price of Wood. But in a Wayne you may carry a hundreth and fifty Poles, and I speake small cause why a load of these should be much dearer then a load of any other Wood.

After

After the first yeare, Poles will be nothing chargeable unto you, for you may either picke them out of your owne provisi-
on of Euell, or buy them of your Neighbours that have no oc-
casion to apply them this way. For the yearely supply of two
loades of Poles, will maintaine one Acre continually.

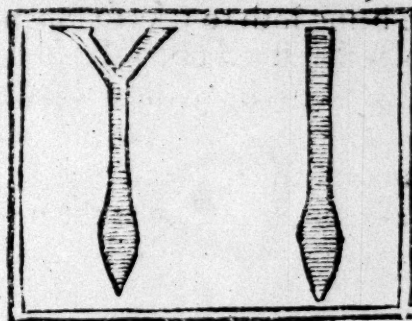
Your rotten and broken Poles will doe you good service,
for the kindling of your fiers in the Oste, whereupon you
should dry your Hops, and they should be preserved chiefly
for that purpose.

At *Poppering* (where both scarcity and experience hath
taught them to make carefull provision hereof) they doe com-
monly at the *East* and *North* side of their Gardens, set and
preserve Alders, wherewith they continually maintaine them.

Before you set up your Poles, lay them all alongst your
Garden betweene every row of hills by three or foure toge-
ther, I meane beside every Hill so many Poles as you deter-
mine to set thereon, so shall you make the more speed in your
worke.

Of the erection of Poles.

VHen your Hops appeare above the ground, so as
you may discerne where the principall roots stand,
set up your Poles, preparing their way with a Crow of Iron,
or a forked wooden toole, with a point of Iron, somewhat



like unto these. For if you stay
till the Hops be growne to a
greater length, one inconveni-
ence is, that either in making
the holes, or in erecting the
poles, or else in ramming the
earth to the fastening of them,
you shall hazard the bruising or
breaking of your Hops: ano-

ther is, that you shall be faine to tie every stalke to the Pole,
whereas otherwise the most part of them will clime up of
their owne accord: the third is, that it will hinder the growth
of the Hop, if it remaine unstay'd so long.

You

You must set every Pole a foot and a halfe deepe, and within two or three inches at the most of the principall roote.

If your ground be rockie and shallow, tarry the longer before you set up your Poles, so as your Hops may be growne two or three foote high, that you may adventure to make a hill or banke at every pole to stay and uphold the same, without burying any of the younger Springs, which may afterward be covered with lesse danger and annoyance of the principall roote.

Let the Poles of every hill leane a little outward one from another.

Of Ramming of Poles.

THen with a peece of wood as big below as the great end of one of your Poles, ramme the earth that lyeth at the outside of the Pole thereunto, but meddle not within the compasse of your Poles, as they are placed, lest you spoile the Springs.

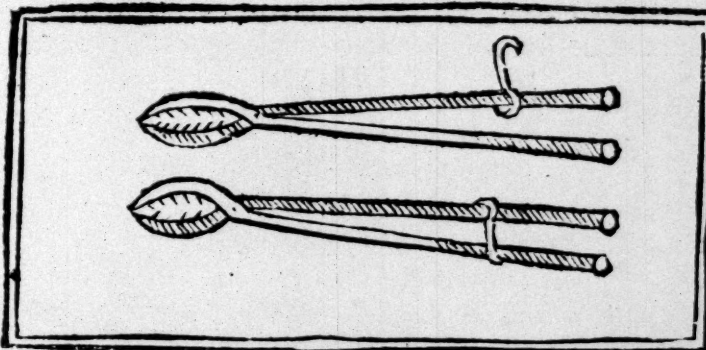
Of Reparation of Poles.

IF any of the Poles chance to breake in many peeces when the Hop is growne up, undoe and pull away the same broken Pole, and tye the top of those Hops to the top of a new pole, then winding it a turne or two about according to the course of the Sunne, set it in the hole, or besides the hole where the broken Pole stood, but some being loth to take so much paines, turne it about the other Poles that stand upon the same hill, and so leave it. But if it be not broken above the midst, the best way is, to set a new Pole or stalke beside the broken pole to the same, which may uphold the said broken pole, and preserve the Hop. If the pole be onely broken at the nether end, you may shove the said pole againe into the hill, and so leave it.

Of pulling up Poles.

ANd because, when the hills are made great, and raised high, you can neither easily pull up any, nor possible pull up all your poles except you breake them, &c. especially if the wether or the ground be dry, or else the Poles old or small, I thought

thought good to shew you an Instrument wherewith you shall pull them up without disease to your selfe, destruction to your poles, or expence of your money the charge being



only foure-
teene or fif-
teen pound
of Iron,
wherewith
the Smith
shall make
you a paire
of tongs,

(or rather you may call them) a paire of pinfers, of the fashion here set downe, the which may also be made with wood if you thiake good.

*The way to make the Instrument wherewith to
pull up the Hoppe Poles.*

They must be one yard in length, whereof sixe or seaven inches may be allowed for the mouth or lower end of them, which serueth to claspe or catch hold on the Pole, the same nether end should be the strongest part thereof, and the mouth somewhat hollow in the middest, and there also bending downward, whereby the extreame point may rise a little upward.

Vpon the upper edges of the inside thereof, the Smith should hacke or raise a few small teeth, whereby your tooles may take the surer hold upon the Pole.

He must also fasten upon every side of this Instrument a ryding hooke, the which may claspe and stay both sides together when they have caught hold on the pole.

*The manner of pulling up the Hoppe
Poles.*

You shall lay a little square block upon the top of the hill, and the better to remove the same from hill to hill, you

Q

may

may thrust therein a pinne. Upon the same blocke you may rest your pinsers when they have clasped the very lowest part of your Pole, and then holding the upper part of each side in your hands, the hooke being clasped, and pulled up hard towards you, you shall easily weigh up your Poles.

Of the preservation of Poles.

AND although we are not yet come to the laying up of Poles, I am bold herein, as I began too late, so to make an end too quickly, because I would touch the whole matter of Poles together, laying them by themselves, (I meane) comprehending under one title, the businesse appertaining unto them.

For the preservation and better continuance of Poles, some make houses of purpose, and lay them up therein.

Some set them upright to a Tree, and over them make a penthouse of boughes or boords.

Some lay a great heape of Hopstalkes upon the ground, and upon them a great heape of Poles, and upon the Poles againe lay another heape of stalkes, &c.

These men doe hereby expresse no great experience, although by their diligence they signifie a good desire.

You shall need to doe no more but thus. At the ends or sides of your Garden, take three Poles standing upon three hills placed directly one by another, and three like Poles upon three other hills of the next row right over against them, constrain them to meet together by two and two in the tops, and so hold them till one with a forked wand may put three Withes (like unto three Broome bands, which may be made of the stalkes of Hops) upon each couple of the said sixe Poles, so shall the same sixe Poles being so bound by two and two together, stand like the rooffe or rafters of an house.

To keepe the Poles that shall lye nethermost from rotting, by the moystnesse of the ground: within the compasse of your said sixe hills, (underneath the Poles that you have fastened

stened together in the tops,) raise three little bankes crosse or thwart from hill to hill, as though you would make your sixe hills to be but three.

Vpon those bankes lay a few Hopstalkes, and upon them your Poles, observing that one stand at one end of the roome, and another at the other end, ordering the matter so, as the tops of the Poles lye not all one way, but may be equally and orderly devided: otherwise one end of the roome would be full before the other, whereas now they shall lye even and sharpe above, like an Haystacke, or the ridge of an house, and sufficiently defend themselves from the weather.

If you thinke that you have not Poles enough to fill the roome, pull downe the Withs or bands lower, and your roome will be lesse, and this doe before you lay in your Poles.

Of tying of Hoppes to the Poles.

VHen your Hops are growne about one or two foote high, bind up (with a Rush or a Grasse) such as decline from the Poles, winding them as often about the same Poles as you can, and directing them alwayes according to the course of the Sunne, but if your leisure may serue (to doe it at any other time of the day) doe it not in the morning when the dew remaineth upon them.

If you lay soft Greene Rushes abroad in the dew and the Sunne, within two or three dayes, they will be lythic, tough, and handsome for this purpose of tying, which may not be fore-slowed, for it is most certaine that the Hop that lyeth long upon the ground before he be tyed to the Pole, prospereth nothing so well as it which sooner attaineth thereunto:

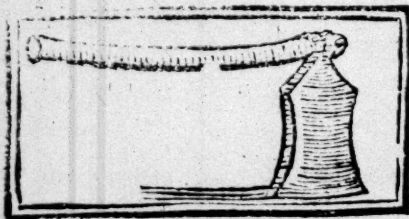
Of Hilling and Hills.

Now you must begin to make your Hills, and for the better doing thereof, you must prepare a toole of Iron fashioned somewhat like to a Coopers Adde, but not

so much bowing, neither so narrow at the head, and therefore likest to the nether part of a shovell, the powle whereof must be made with a round hole to receive a helve, like to the helve of a Mattock, and in the powle also a naile hole must be made, to fasten it to the helve.

This helve should bow somewhat like to a Siche, or to the steale of a Siche, and it must be little more then a yard long.

The helve
hercof
should be
straight at
the upper
end.



With this toole you may pare away the Grasse which groweth in the spaces betwixt the hills, and with the same also you may raise your hills, and pull them downe when time requireth.

Some thinke it unpertinent and not necessary to make hills the first yeare, partly because their distrust of this yeares profite quallifieth their diligence in this behalfe, and partly for that they thinke that the principall roote prospereth best, when there be no new rootes of them forced and maintained. But experience confuteth both these conjectures, for by industry, the first yeares profit will be great, and thereby also the principall sets much amended, as their prosperity in the second yeare will plainly declare.

But in this worke you must be both painefull and curious, as wherein consisteth the hope of your gaines, and the successe of your worke. For the greater in quantity you make your hills, the more in number you shall have of your Hops, and the fewer weeds you shall have on your ground, the more Hops you shall have upon your Poles.

In consideration whereof I say, your labour must be continuall from this time almost till the time of gathering, in raising your hills and clearing ground from weeds.

In the first yeare that you plant your Hop garden, suppress not one sciencie, but suffer them all to clime up to the Poles, for if you should bury or cover all the springs of any one of your three rootes, which you did lately set, the roote thereof perisheth, and perhaps out of some one roote there will

will not proceed above one or two springs, which being buried, that roote I say dyeth, and therefore the more poles are at this time requisite.

After the first yeare you must not suffer above two or three stalkes at the most to grow up to one Pole, but put downe and bury all the rest.

Howbeit, you may let them all grow till they be foure or five foot high at the least, whereby you shall make the better choice of them which you meane to attaine, whereby also the principall roote will be the better, &c.

Some suffer their Hops to clime up to the tops of the Poles, and then make the hills at one instant in such quantity as they meane to leave them, which is neither the best nor the second way.

But if (for expedition) you be driven hereunto, begin sooner (that is to say) when the Hops be foure or five foot long, and afterwards if leisure shall serve, refresh them againe with more earth.

But to make them well, and as they ought to be made, you must immediately after your poles are set, make a little banke or circle round about the outside of them, as a mention how wide your hill shall be, and as a receptacle to retaine and keepe moisture, whereof there cannot lightly come too much, so it come from above.

If your Garden be great, by that time that you have made an end of these circles or bankes, it will be time to proceed further towards the building up of your hills.

Now therefore returne againe to the place where you began, or else where you see the Hops highest, and with your toole pare off the uppermost earth from the Allies or spaces betwene the hills, and lay the same in your Hops, upon and within the circle that you made before, alwayes leaving the same highest of any part of the hill, and so passe through your Garden againe and againe, till you have raised your hills by little and little, to so great a quantity as is before declared, and looke how high your hill is, so long are your new

rootes, and the greater your new rootes or springs be, the more larger and better your Hops will be.

Great and overgrowne weeds should not be laid upon the hills, as to raise them to their due quantity, but when with diligence and expedition you passe through your Garden, continually paring away each greene thing alsoone as it appeareth, you shall doe well, with the same, and the uppermost mould of your Garden together, to maintaine and encrease the substance of your hills, even till they be almost a yard high.

In the first yeare nake not your hill too rath, least in the doing thereof you oppresse some of these springs which would otherwise have appeared out of the ground.

It shall not be amisse now and then to passe through your Garden, having in each hand a forked wand, directing aright such Hops as decline from the poles, but some in stead of the said forked wands, use to stand upon a stoole, and doe it with their hands.

Abuses in Hilling.

Some observe no time, and some no measure in making their hills, but (having hard say that hills are necessary) they make them they care not when nor how.

Some make hills once for all, and never after plucke down the same, but better it were to make no hill, then so to doe, for after the first yeare it doth derogate, and not adde any comfort to the rootes, except the same be every yeare new made and dressed, &c.

Some use to breake off the tops of the Hops when they are growne a xi. or xii. foote high, because thereby they burnish and stocke exceedingly, wherein though I cannot commend their doings, yet doe they much better then such as will have their Poles as long as their Hops.

But if your Pole be very long, and that the Hop have not attained to the top thereof before the middest of *July*, you shall doe well then to breake or cut off the top of the same Hop, for so shall the residue of the growing time serve to the
maine

maintenance and encrease of the branches, which otherwise would expire without doing any good in that matter, because that whole time would then be imployed to the lengthening of the stalke, which little prevaileth (I say) to the stocking or encrease of the Hoppe,

And here is to be noted that many covetous men thinking (in hast) to enlarge their lucre, doe find (at leisure) their commodity diminished, whilst they make their hills too thicke, their Poles too long, and suffer too many stalkes to grow up on one Pole, wherein (I say) while they runne away flattering themselves with the imagination of double gaines, they are overtaken with trebble dammage (that is to say) with the losse of their time, their labour, and their cost.

Of the gathering of Hoppes.

NOte that commonly at St. *Margarets* day, Hops blow. And at *Lammas* they bell, but what time your Hops begin to change colour (that is to say) somewhat before *Mischaelmas* (for then you shall perceive the seed to change colour, and waxe browne) you must gather them, and for the speedier dispatch thereof, procure as much helpe as you can, taking the advantage of faire weather, and note that you were better to gather them too rath then too late.

To doe the same in the readiest and best order, you must pull downe foure hills standing together in the middest of your Garden, cut the rootes of all those hills, as you shall be taught in the title of Cutting, &c. Then pare the plot small, levell it, throw water on it, tread it, and sweepe it, so shall it be a faire floore, whereon the Hoppes must lye to be picked.

Then beginning neare unto the same, cut the stalkes asunder close by the tops of the hills, and if the Hops of one Pole be growne fast unto another, cut them also asunder with a sharpe hooke, and with a forked staffe take them from the Poles.

You may make the Forke and Hooke (which cutteth asunder the Hops that grow together) one apt instrument to serve both these turnes.

Then may you with the forked end, thrust up, or shove off, all such stalkes as remaine upon each Hop pole, and carry them to the floore prepared for that purpose.

For the better doing hereof, it is very necessary that your Poles be straight without scrags or knobs.

In any wise cut no more stalkes then you shall carry away within one houre or two at the most, for if in the meane time the Sunne shine hote, or it happen to raine, the Hops remaining cut in that sort) will be much impaired thereby.

Let all such as helpe you, stand round about the floore, and suffer them not to pingle in picking one by one, but let them speedily strip them into Baskets prepared ready therefore.

It is not hurtfull greatly though the smaller leaves be mingled with the Hops, for in them is retained great vertue, insomuch as in *Flanders* they were sold, *Anno Domini* 1566. for xxvi shillins viii. pence the hundreth, no one Hop being mingled with them.

Remember alwayes to cleare your floore twice or thrice every day, and sweepe it cleane at every such time, before you goe to worke againe.

If the weather be unlike to be faire, you may carry these Hoppes into your house in Blankets or Baskets, &c. and there accomplish this worke. Use no linnen hereabouts, for the Hops will staine it so, as it can never be washed out.

If your Poles be scraggie, so as you cannot strip the stalkes from them in this order, you must pull them up with maine force before the Hops be gathered, and this is painfull to your selfe, hurtfull to your Hops, and a delay to your worke.

Then must you lay these poles upon a couple of forked stalkes driven into the ground, being two or three yards distant one from another, as Spits upon Ranges, and so dispatch this businesse if the weather be faire, if it be like to be foule, you must be faine to carry the Hops together with the Pole into

into your Barne or house,

In any wise let not the Hops be wet when you cut them from the hills, neither make any delay of gathering after the same time of cutting, for in standing abroad they will shed their seed, wherein consisteth the chiefe vertue of the Hop, and hercof I cannot warne you too often, nor too earnestly.

Now by order I should declare unto you the manner of drying your Hops, but because I must therewithall describe the places meet for that purpose, with many circumstances appertaining thereunto, I will be bold first to finish the worke within your Hop-garden, and then to lead you out of the same, into the place where you must dry your Hops, &c.

When your Hops are gathered, as soon as you have leisure, take up your poles and pile them (that remaine good) as I have shewed you in the title of Poles.

Then carry out your broken Poles, and the Hop-straw to the fire.

Now may you depart out of your Garden, till the *March* following, except in the meane time you will bring in dung or good earth to the maintenance thereof, towards the heightning of your hills, or else will plough it, &c.

What there is to be done in Winter hereon.

TO be curious in laying Dung upon the hills in Winter, as to comfort or warme the rootes (as some doe) it shall be needlesse, rather plucke downe the hills, and let the rootes lye bare all the Winter season, and this is usually done where Hops are best ordered, especially to restrain them from too rath springing, which is the cause of Blasts and many other Inconveniences.

If the ground be great that you keepe, you shall be driven
so to doe, otherwise you shall not be able to overcome your
worke in due time.

In any case you must avoid new horse-dung as a very
R
poisonous

R

доуформе

noysome and pernicious thing for your Hops.

Stall dung is the best that can be wished for to serve this turne, so it be thoroughly rotten.

Rather use no dung than unrotten dung about the dressing of your Hops, but omit not to bring into your Garden dung that may there be preserved till it be good or needfull to be used.

When and where to lay Dung.

ABout the end of *Aprill* (if your ground be not rich enough) you must helpe every hill with a handfull or two of good earth, not when you cut your rootes, for then it will rather doe harme then good, but when the Hop is wound about the Pole, then should you doe it.

The order for reforming your Ground.

IN *March* you shall returne to your Garden, and find it replenished with weedes, except by tillage, &c. you have prevented that matter already. It must (as well therefore, as because the earth may be more fine, rich, and easie to be delivered unto the hills) be digged over or plowed, except in the case mentioned.

The order of cutting Hoppe-rootes.

VW Hen you pull downe your hills, (which if you have not already done, you must now of necessity goe about to doe) you should (with your Garden toole) undermine them round about till you come neere to the principall roots, and then take the upper or younger rootes in your hand, and shake of the earth, which earth being againe removed away with your said toole you shall discerne where the new rootes grow out of the old Sets.

In the doing hereof, be carefull that you spoyle not the old Sets, as for the other roots which are to be cut away, you shall not need to spare them to the delay of your work, except such as you meane to set.

Take heed that you uncover not any more then the tops of the old sets in the first yeare of cutting.

Ac

At what time soever you pull downe your hills, cut not your rootes before the end of *March*, or in the beginning of *Aprill*, and then remember the wind,

In the first yeare (I meane) at the first time of cutting and dressing of your rootes, you must (with a sharpe knife) cut away all such rootes or springs as grew the yeare before out of your sets, within one inch of the same.

Every yeare after you must cut them as close as you can to the old rootes, even as you see an Olives head cut.

There groweth out of the old sets certaine Rootes, right downwards not joynted at all, which serve onely for the nourishing and comfort of those sets or principall rootes which are not to be cut off. There be other like unto them growing outward at the sides of the sets. If these be not met withall, and cut asunder, they will encumber your whole Garden.

Because it may seeme hard to discern the old sets from the new Springs, I thought good to advertise you how easie a thing it is to see the difference thereof; for first you shall be sure to find your Sets where you did set them, nothing increased in length, but somewhat in bignesse enlarged, and in few yeares all your Sets will be growne into one, so as by the quantity that thing shall plainly appeare: and lastly, the difference is seene by the colour, the old roote being red, the other white, but if the hills be not yearly pulled downe, and the rootes yearly cut, then indeed the old sets shall not be perceived from the other rootes.

If your Sets be small, and placed in good ground, and the hill well maintained, the new rootes will be greater then the old.

If there grow in any hill a wild Hop, or whensoever the stalke waxeth red, or when the Hop in any wise decayeth, pull up every roote in that hill, and set new in their places, at the usuall time of cutting and setting, or if you list, you may doe it when you gather Hops, with the rootes which you cut away, when you make your picking place.

Of divers mens follies.

MAny men seeing the springs so forward, as they will be by this time, are loth to loose the advantage thereof, and more unwilling to cut away so many goodly Rootes, but they that are timorous in this behalfe, take pittie upon their own profit, and are like unto them that reframe to lay dung upon their Corneland, because they would not betray it with so uncleanly a thing.

And some that take upon them great skill herein, thinke that for the first year they may be left unhilled and uncult, &c. deceiving themselves with this conceit, that then the Sets prosper best within the ground when they send least of their nature and state out of the ground. In this respect also they pull away or suppress all such Springs (as soone as they appeare) which grow more, and besides them which they meane to assigne to each Pole, as though when a mans fingers were cut off, his hand would grow the greater. Indeed if there be no hill maintained, then the more Springs are suffered to grow from out of the principall roote, the more burden and punishment it will be to the same. But when the Springs are maintained with a hill, so much as remaineth within the same is converted into rootes, which rather adde then take away any state from the principall roote, in consideration hereof, the suppressing of the Springs may not be too rash, for whatsoever opinion be hereof received, the many Springs never hurt the principall roote, if the hills be well maintained, but it is the cumbring and shadowing of one to another that worketh the annoyance.

When you have cut your Hops you must cover them as you were taught in the title of Setting, and proceeding according to the order already set downe,

Of Disorders and Maintainers thereof.

Some there be that despise good order, being deceived with a shew of increase, which sometime appeareth in a disorderd

red ground, to them I say, and say it truly, that the same is a bad and a small increase in respect of the other.

I say also that although disorderly doings at the first may have a countenance of good successe, yet in few yeares the same, and all hope thereof will certainly decay.

Some other there be that despise good order, satisfying themselves with this, that they have sufficiently to serve their owne turne, without all these troubles, and surely it were pity that these should be troubled with any great abundance, that in contempt of their owne profite, and of the Commonwealth, neglect such a benefit proffered unto them.

Of an Oste.

NOW have I shewed unto you the perfect Platforme of a Hop-Garden, out of the which I led you for a time, and brought you in againe when time required, and there would I leave you about your businesse, were it not to shew you by description such an Oste as they dry their Hops upon at *Popping*, with the order thereof, &c. Which for the small charges and trouble in drying, for the speedy and well drying, and for the handsome and easie doing thereof, may be a profitable patterne, and a necessary instruction for as many as have, or shall have to doe herein.

Of the severall Roomes for an Oste.

First a little house must be built, of length xviii. or xix. foote, of widenesse eight, wherein must be comprehended three severall roomes.

The middle and principall roome must be for your Oste, eight foote square. The fore-part which is to containe your Greene Hops, and the hinder part which must receive your dried Hops, will fall out to be five foote long, and eight foote wide a peece.

The chiefe matters that are to be by me described herein, are the Furnace below, wherein the fire is to be made, and the

the bed above whereon the Hops must lye to be dried: this I have chiefly to advise you of, that you build the whole house and every part thereof as close as you can, and to place it neare to your Garden for the better expedition of your work, and somewhat distant from your house to avoid the danger of fire.

Of the Furnace or Keele.

THe floore or nether part of your Furnace must be about thirteene inches wide.

The depth or height thereof must be thirty inches,

The length of it must be about sixe or seaven foote (that is to say) reaching from the forepart of the Oute almost to the further end thereof, so as there be left no more roome but as a man may passe betweene the wall and the end of it.

It must be made wide below and narrow above, fashioned in outward shape somewhat like to the rooffe of an house.

It must have three rowes of holes at each side, the length of one Brick asunder, and the bignesse of halfe a Bricke, placed checkerwise. Before you begin to make your holes, you should lay two rowes of Bricke, and when your three rankes of holes are placed upon them, you must lay againe over them another row of Bricke, and upon the same you must place your last and highest course, and they must stand long-wise (as it were a tiptoe) the tops of the Bricks meeting together above (the nether part of them resting upon the uppermost course) and note that till then, each side must be built alongst directly upward.

You should leave almost a foot space betweene the mouth of your Furnace, and your rowes of holes, especially of that row which is nethermost.

The further or hinder end of your Furnace the which is opposite to the mouth thereof, must be built flat with an upright wall, and there must also be left holes as at the sides.

The Furnace in the top (I meane from the upper course of holes) must be dawbed very well with mortar.

And so upon the top of your Furnace there will remaine a gutter,

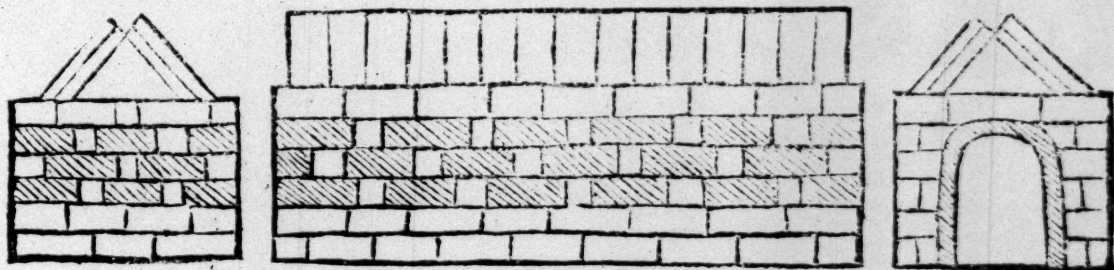
gutter, (whereupon the *Flemmings* use to bake Apples, &c.) and the highest part thereof will reach within two foote and leise of the Oste.

Finally, it must be placed upon the ground in the midst of the lower floore of the Oste, the which floore must be made

The hindermost part or further end of the Furnace.

One side of the Furnace.

The mouth and fore part of the Furnace.



very perfect, fine, and leuell, the reason whereof you shall perceive in the tytle of Drying.

Of the bed or upper floore of the Oste, wherein the Hops must be dried.

THe bed or upper floore whereon the Hops shall lye to be dried, must be placed almost five foote above the neather floore, whereon the Furnace standeth.

The two walls at each side of the house, serve for the bed to rest upon two wayes.

Now must two other walls be built at each end of your Oste, whereon the other two parts of the bed must rest, and by this meanes shall you have a close square roome beneath, betwixt the lower floore and the bed, so as the floore below shall be as wide as the bed above.

These two walls must also be made foure foot above the bed (that is to say) about nine foot high.

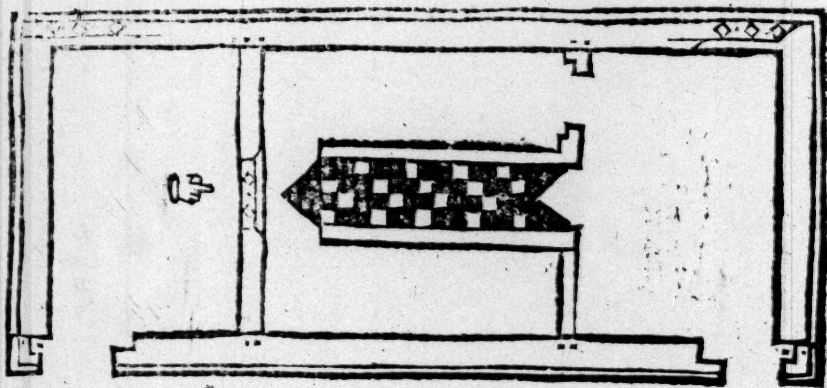
At the one end below, besides the mouth of the furnace, you must make a little doore into the roome beneath the bed. At the

the other end above the bed you must make a Window to shoue off from the bed the dried Hops, downe into the roomes below prepared for them.

The bed should be made as the bed of any other Oste, saving that the Railes or Laths which serve therefore must be sawne very even one inch square, and laide one quarter of an iach asunder. But there may be no more beames to stay the Laths but one, and the same must be laide flat and not on edge, in the midst from one end of that room to the other, and the Laths must be let into the same beame, so as the upper side of the beame and all the Laths may lye even.

If your Garden be very great, you may build your house somewhat larger, namely xxii. foot long, and tenne foot broad, and then you must make in this Oste two Furnaces, three or foure foot asunder, placing the doore betwixt them both, otherwise in all points like to that which I first described, and

The Window
above
may
not stand
below in the
nether room
but above as
is before de-
clared.



the ground worke hereof is so set out here, that any Carpenter will easily frame the whole house by the same figure.

And now once againe wishing you to make every doore, Window, and joynt of this house close, I will leave building, and proceed to the drying of Hops, saving that I may not omit to tell you, that you should either build all the walls of this room with Bricke, or else with Lime and Haire pargie them over: and at the least that wall wherein the mouth of
the

the Furnace standeth be made of Bricke.

And although I have delayed you from time to time; and brought you from place to place, and tediously led you in and out, and too and fro in the demonstration hereof, yet must I be bold to bring you round about againe, even to the place where I left you picking, from whence you must speedily convey your pickt Hops to the place built and prepared for them, and with as much speed hasten the drying of them.

The orderly Drying of Hoppes.

THe first businesse that is to be done herein, is to goe up to the bed of the Oste, and there to receive Baskets filled with Hops, at the hands of one that standeth below.

Then beginning at the further end (least you should tread on them) lay downe Basketfull by Basketfull, till the floore or bed be all covered, alwayes stirring them even and leuell, with a Cudgell, so as they may lye about a foote and a halfe thicke, and note that upon this Oste, there is no Oste-cloth to be used.

Now must you come downe to make your fire in the Furnace, for the kindling whereof your old broken Poles are very good, howbeit, for the continuance and maintenance of this fire, that wood is best which is not too dry, and somewhat great.

Your Hop stalkes or any other straw is not to be used herein.

You shall not need to lay the wood through to the farther end of your Furnace, for the fire made in the fore-pare thereof, will bend that way, so as the heate will universally and indifferently ascend and proceed out of every hole.

You must keepe herein a continuall and hote fire, howbeit, you must stirre it as little as you can.

Neither may you stirre the Hops that lye upon the Oste, untill they be throughly dried.

When they are dry above, then are they ready to be removed away, and yet sometimes it happeneth (that through

the disorderly laying of them) they are not so soone dry in one place, as they are in another.

The way to helpe that matter, is to take a little Pole (where- with you shall sensibly feele and perceive which be, and which be not dry, by the rattling of the Hops which you shall there- with touch) and with the same Pole of turne aside such Hops as be not dry, abating the thicknesse to the moyst place.

When your Hops are dry, rake up the fire in such sort as there may be no delay in the renewing thereof.

Then with expedition shove them out of the window be- fore mentioned into the roome prepared to receive them, with a Rake fashioned like a Cole-rake, having in stead of teeth a boord, &c.

This being done, goe downe into the lower floore, and sweepe together such Hops and Seeds as are fallen thereinto, and lay them up among the dried Hops, and then without delay cover the bed againe with greene Hops, and kindle your fire.

Lay your dried Hops on a heape together till they be cold, and by this meanes such as were not perfectly dried through some disorder upon the Oste, shall now be reformed.

If they have beene well ordered, they will now be throwne, and yet bright.

If they be blacke and darke, it is a note that they are dis- ordered.

The *Flemmings* packe them not up before they sell them to the Marchant, but lay them in some corner of a Loft where they tread them close together.

Other manners of Drying: not so good.

Some use to dry their Hops upon a common Oste, but that way there can be no great speed in your worke, nor small expence of your wood, besides the danger of fire and ill suc- cesse of your doings.

On this Oste you must have an Oste cloth, otherwise the Seed and Hops that fall downe shall not onely perish, but en-
dang

danger the burning of your Oste.

Upon this Oste you may not lay your Hops above eight or nine inches thicke, which nevertheless shall not be so soone dry as they which lye upon the other Oste almost two foote thicke, and therefore this way you shall make more toyle in your worke, more spoyle in your Hops, and more expence in your wood.

Some use to dry their Hops in a Garret, or upon the floore of a Loft or Chamber, in the reproofe whereof I must say, that as few men have roome enough in their houses to containe any great quantity or multitude of Hops, so the dust that will arise, shall empaire them, the chinkes, crevisses, and open joynts of your Lofts being not close byrthed, will devour the seeds of them, in the end the leaves will endanger them with heating, when they are packt, as being not so soone dry as the Hops, which thereby shall be utterly spoyled in colour, in scent, and in verdure.

As for any low roomes or earthen floores, they are yet worse for this purpose then the other, for either they yeeld dust in drinesse or moisture in wet weather.

And therefore if you have no Oste, dry them in a Loft as open to the ayre as may be: sweepe, wash, and rub the beords, and let your Broome reach to the walls, and even to the rooffe of your Loft, for I can teach you no way to devide the dust from your Hops, but so to prevent the inconvenience hereof.

Stop the holes and chinkes of your floore, lay them not above halfe a foote thicke, and turne them once a day at the least, by the space of two or three weekes.

This being done, sweepe them up into a corner of your Loft, and there let them lye as long more, for yet there remaineth perill in packing of them.

If the yeare prove very wet, your Hops aske the longer time of drying, and without an Oste will never be well dried.

The very worst way of drying Hops.

Some lay their Hops in the Sunne to dry, and this taketh away the state of the Hops, and nevertheless leaveth the

purpose of drying undone.

Of not Drying.

SOME gather them, and brew with them being greene and sundried, supposing that in drying, the vertue and state of the Hop decayeth and fadeth away, wherein they are deceived: for the verdure is worse, the strength lesse, and the quantity must be more of green Hops that are to be brewed in this sort.

In the first Woert which the Brewers call the Hopwort (because the time of seething thereof is short) there goeth out of these Hops almost no vertue at all, and therefore experience hath taught them that are driven to brew with these greene Hops, to seeth them againe in the Woert, which they call the Ney beere, where after long seething they will leave the state which remaineth in them, and that is not much.

Of the Packing of Hops.

IN the making of your Hop-sackes, use your owne cunning or invention, for I have small skill therein, howbeit, I can tell you that the Hop-sackes that are brought out of *Flanders*, may be good samplers for you to worke by, the stuffe is not dainty wherewith they are made, the Loom is not costly wherein they are woven, the cunning nor curious whereby they are fashioned, but when you have them, and are ready to packe your Hops, doe thus.

Thrust into the mouth of your Sacke (which must be doubled and turned in strongly lest it breake) foure strong pinnes, a foot long a peece, placed in equall distance the one from the other, then lay two Bats or big Poles crosse or thwart two Beames or Couplings of your house, which two Bats must lye no farther asunder then the widenesse of the Sackes mouth. Fasten upon each pinne a rope, and knit two of those ropes upon each crosse Batte, so as the bottome of the Sacke being empty, may hang within halfe a foot of the floore, then stand within the Sacke, and receive the Hops, treading downe very hard, and before the Sacke be halfe full, it will rest upon
the

the ground, whereby you shall be able to presse them the harder together.

But the handsemmer way were to make a square hole (as wide as the Sackes mouth) in the floore of the Loft, where your Hops lye, and to hang downe your Sacke at that hole, and with a Scuppet or shovell to shove downe your Hops thereinto, and to receive them as is aforesaid: when the Sacke is almost full, undoe the roapes, and wind those pinnes about for the harder shutting of the Sacke, and fasten them therein.

If you list, you may sow (over the mouth of this Sacke) another peece of Sackcloth, whereof you must leave a little unsowed, untill you have thrust as many Hops as you can betweene the Sacke and the same, but in beholding the Hop-sackes sent from *Poppering*, you shall better understand and learne the doings hereof.

For your owne provision you may preserve them in Dry-fats, Barrels, or such like Vessels, for want of roome to leave them in, or Sackes to packe them in.

There is according to the Proverbe, much falshood in packing, I am unskillfull in that Art, if I were otherwise, I would be loth to teach such doctrine.

But to avoid such deceit, and to make the more perfect and better choise, it is usuall and lawfull in most places where Hops are sold, to cut the Sacke that you mean to buy, in seven or eight places, and to search at each place whether the Hops be of like goodnesse.

Such places as you shall feele with your hand to be softer then the rest, you should specially cut, where perhaps you shall find Hops of another kind, elder or worse then the rest.

The reformation of a Garden of wild Hops.

TO reforme a Garden where the Hops be wild, the work is tedious, and none other way remaineth, but to digge over the same with a Spade, so deepe as you may search out and throw out every roote and peece of roote that

may be found in, or neare thereunto, and then to plant according to the order before declared.

The reformation of a disordered Garden.

TO repaire a ruinous Garden, which through ignorance was disorderly set, and through sloth suffered to overrun and decay, where nevertheless the Hops remaine of a good kind (though somewhat empaired, as needs they must be, by this meanes) the very best way were to doe as to the wild Hoppe.

The second way is to forget that it is disordered at all, imagining that all were well, and to set your Poles in such order, and so farre asunder as is prescribed in that title, alwayes directing them right with a line, so as a stranger beholding them, may suppose that your Garden is kept after the best manner, then lead unto each Pole two or three stalkes which you shall find nearest thereunto, and there erect a hill which you may ever after cut and dresse according to the rules before declared, and so by continuall digging, paring, and diligence, you shall at leisute bring it to some reasonable perfection.

If your Garden be very much matted with rootes, so as it be too tedious to digge, set your Poles as you are already taught, and bring into your Garden, and lay neare to every such place where you meane to make a hill, one Cart lode of good earth, with the which, after your Hops are tyed to your Poles, begin to make your hill, and proceed as in the title of Hills, alwayes cutting downe such Hops or weeds as grow betweene the said hills.

If your rootes be set orderly, and your hills made accordingly, and yet left undressed by the space of two or three yeares, it will be very hard (I say) to discern the Sets from the other later rootes: nevertheless, if your geound be good, you may yet reforme the inconvenience thereof, namely, by pulling downe the hill, and cutting away all the rootes contained therein, even with the face or upper part of the earth, searching also each side, and digging yet lower, and round about

bout the roote which remaineth, and to take away from the same all such rootes as appeare out thereof.

Needlesse curiosities used by the unskilfull.

TO water your Garden, as to make the rootes grow the better, it were more tedious then needfull, for the hilling thereof serveth for that purpose, and there is time of growing sufficient for them betwixt the middest of *Aprill* and *August*. and yet it never hurteth, but rather doth good, if it be before the hill be made.

To plucke of the leaves, to the end that the Hops may prosper the better, is also needlesse, and to no purpose, and rather hindereth then helpeth the growth of the Hops, for they are hereby deprived of that garment which Nature hath necessarily provided for them, and clothed them with.

To flaw the Poles, thereby to prolong their continuance, is more then needeth to be done in this behalfe, for it is too tedious to your selfe, and hurtfull to your Hop, and little availeth to the purpose afore-said.

To burne the nether part or great end of your Poles, as some doe, to the end they should last or endure the longer, as also endure the longer, is also an unnecessary trouble, onely Willow Poles you may so use, to keepe them from growing.

So is it to weed the Hills with the hand, whereas the same weeds shall be buried by the raising of the Hill.

Ff N f S.

The expert Gardener :

OR,

A Treatise containing certaine necessary, secret, and ordinary knowledges in Grafting and Gardening : with divers proper new Plots for the Garden.

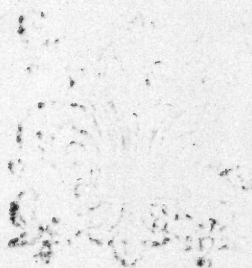
Also sundry expert Directions to know the time and season when to sow and replant all manner of Seeds. With divers remedies to destroy Snails, Canker-wormes, Moths, Garden-Fleas, Earth-wormes, Moles, and other Vermine.

Faithfully collected out of sundry Dutch and French Authors.



LONDON,
Printed by Richard Herne.
1640.

Printed and Sold by
J. B. L. & Co. 10, N. York St. N. Y.



1850
J. B. L. & Co. 10, N. York St. N. Y.



*Certaine common Instructions how the
Stumpe must be chosen, whereupon you
will graffe or plant.*



Very diligent Housholder who will plant, should use thereto a convenient place, to the end that the wilde beast chaw not, nor paire the Plants; or if they be yong, wholly eat in pieces: which to avoid, is needfull to be in a towne or closed Orchard where there is not too much shadow, but a sweet ground well muckt, tilled and turned.

Every Plant will have foure things:

First moistnesse, so that the seeds or stumpe bee moist or green.

Secondly a convenient place, which hath such earth as will lightly be rubbed to powder, and that Sun may come to it: for where there is filthy lome, a lean ground, or sandy, dry, burnt, or salt ground, there is nothing good to be planted, to have any continuance: neverthelesse where the ground is lean, there you must give more dung; in a fat ground not so much. Take heed the ground be not too moist nor too dry: and muck the trees with hogs dung.

A 2

Thirdly

Thirdly, a mediate water or nourishing moistnesse, therefore be those Orchards best which are scituated between two waters, for those that are placed by a water side remaine still yong and fruitfull, and have commonly the bark smoother and thinner than the others. And those trees are more fruitfull than others which are planted in a valley, or in the lower part of a deepe hill: for from those hills may come to them nourishment and moistnesse, and the ground which is so scituated is very fruitfull. But he that cannot get for his trees such a ground, must with all diligence seeke to bring to his trees a little spring or pond, of which the trees may sometimes finde some reviving, and if you may not have any of those, and have a garden who by it self is naught, the trees will grow with thicke roots, which hindereth the growing of them, and drieth them at length.

Fourthly, The aire is required, which must be agreeable to them, and of complexion to beare; for there be some trees that doe prosper in all aires, to wit, apple and peare, cherry and plum-trees. Some will have a cold aire, to wit Chestnut trees; & some a very warme aire, as the palme and pepper trees: therefore they be rare with us. That plant which hath these foure things shall prosper: and if they want one or more of these foure things, they wil decay, and their prospering perish.

At what time trees ought to be planted and set.

ALL kind of trees may be planted, transported, and cut in March, but it is better to turn them in October, for then the frost hurteth them not so much

much as at other times : for learned men say, that in dry townes and warm countries they plant in October or November, and that in moist townes and cold vallies they plant in February or March: in none other time may you plant or graffe. When you will plant or set againe wild stumps, if there be any thing broken at the root, cut it off. Euery plant must be set two foot one from another, or at the least one foot, especially when they should beare strong fruits: likewise when thou wilt set strong seeds, as nuts, almonds and peaches. When a man will plant two stumps, so must they be of two yeare old, except the uine.

These things you must understand of those plants or stumps which are planted with roots.

How the stumps and plants must be prepared and dressed, which you will plant.

THe plant or sprout you must cut round about, so that you leave the very end of it, and put it then into an hole, but if the stump be great, cut it clean off, and then put only the undermost part into a hole, long or short as you will: but if you find two stumps growne together, you may cut the lesser away. And above all things you must take heed that the sprout grow upright, and if it will not, you must constraine it, and tie it to a sticke.

Here follow certaine instructions how the trees must be kept and how you must labour them.

Some trees will have a fat ground, as Figge trees and Mulberrie trees, and some leane ground, but

all trees be in that point equall, that they will have in the top dry ground, and in the bottome moist earth.

2 In harvest you must uncover the roots of the trees so deep, that they may partly be scene, and lay dung upon them, which dung must be dissolved of raine in the ground, that it may come to the roots, which mucking giveth good increase to the roots.

3 If the ground wherein the trees stand bee too sandy, then mixe among it saire and new lome: and if it be too lomy then mixe amongst it sand in place of mucke, the which you must not only doe hard by the tree, but also foure or five foot off from it round about the tree, according as the tree is in bignes, or that the roots are large and great.

Such diligence giueth to the trees great help, for their nourishment and strength is thereby renewed. Hereafter you shall understand, whereby to know the fruitfull soile.

4 In the fat ground the stumps whereupon you wil graf, must be left long, but in lean ground short.

5 The plants of trees from their youth, till three yeres must not be cut nor shred, but they may bee transported, and if they be too weak you may pricke sticks next unto them.

6 Diligent regard must be taken, that no sprouts spring out of the stump, which might take the nourishment from the tree sprouts, and those boughes which spring from the root of the tree at the first planting.

7 When thou perceiuest the yong trees to waxe weake, then uncover the roots and put other fresh ground to them.

8 If the ground be neither too soft nor too hard, then may you chuse all kind of stumps in February for to plant, when the green juice is dispersed in the bark, but when the ground is too hard, then the sweet holes or pores of the root doe remaine closed and stopped, so that they cannot draw to them their nourishment, such hardnes of the ground or earth, hindereth the aire and moistnes which commeth from beneath upward, for it cannot be pearced of the soft sprouts, with the small heat which is beneath, therefore you must come to help them with a spade, for with a plough you will neuer come to an end, because of the root.

9 There is great diligence to bee taken for preserving of the trees, when they begin to grow great, to scrape from the barke all rudenesse, which is done, when you take from them all superfluitie, & sprouts which come out of the tree. You may cut them in February.

10 It is good for the trees to mucke them often, and moderatively to water their roots.

Also to cleave the roots, and lay stones into them, to the end they may revive againe of the drienesse which they have suffered, or of the barrennes of the ground, or when the young planted trees for the great heat will perish. Also when immoderate heat is, then you must help them with turning of the ground, and, with watering, but the water wherewith you should water them, must not be altogether fresh nor cold, or newly drawne out of the spring: but out of a ditch, pond, or well, or any other foule ditch water, or with spring water, which hath stood long in the sunne, or put a little dung in the water, and stirre

it once or twice well about, and the water will be fat, wherewith water your trees. You may also keep them with shadowes and straw from the heat : or else put (in great heat) fat green herbs at the stump, tempred with loame : some anoint the stumpe (toward the South or Mid-day) with chalke, some with oile, or with any other ointment that cooleth.

II When you would transpose a plant, or have wilde stumps digged out to plant again, then mark the part which standeth towards the South of mid-day, and put it so againe when you graffe it.

How to keep plants, stumps, or trees, from the wilde beasts, that they hurt them not.

W Here the path of the beast is free and remedlesse, there must be put poles, and with thornes the same yong trees must be inclosed.

That the Deeres spoile them not.

T Ake the pisse of a Deere and anoint the Tree therewith.

That the Hares do not hurt them.

S Pet in thy hand, and anoint the sprouts therewith, and no Hare will hurt them.

Here

The expert Gardener.

Here follow some instructions of grafting.



First you must know that imping, grafting, and setting, is all one thing.

The imping sprouts must be young and new, with great bodies, and many eies: for where many and great buds be, that is a token, that is of a strong fruit.

2 The imping sprouts must be broken off at the sun rising, although that those of the other side broken off grow likewise: yet those of the other side are most naturall and temperate of heat: Some country clownes beleve, that if you in cutting the sprouts turn them upside downe, that they will never grow right, but be crooked.

3. All grafting and imping is don by putting one
B into

into another by a fast binding, that the little sprout may spread his boughs to the stump or tree, wherein it is grafted, that so it may become one tree.

4 Ouer, yong imps (which are so weake that they will breake before they be put into the earth, or into the stump) are naught, and therefore they may not be impd or set.

5 When you impe upon a house, or fruit tree, the fruit will be far better: But if you cut of a Garden tree a branch, and imp into it one of his own sprouts, it will bring forth fruit of another taste, forme and bignesse: for imping maketh all the diuersities in peares, apples, and other fruits.

6 It is far better to impe low in the stumpe, than in the top in the high branches: yet nevertheless if you will make of wilde apple trees garden trees, you may impe them upon the top.

7 In great trees which have a great bark, it is not so good to impe, for they take not to them so easily the veins of the roots which grow out of the young sprouts, because of their hardnes, & especially when the imping sprouts are too weake. Wherefore they which graffe trees must seek smal and yong stumps, wherein they find much liquor and little hardnesse, and which may endure the binding.

8 It is best imping or grafting when the liquor is in the barke, if you have a great tree upon the which you would impe, and hath many branches, you may cut them all off, and impe into the stumps all kinde of boughs, such as you please: but if the tree be over old, so that her boughes be ranckled, and her moistnesse consumed, then cut the tree cleane off, and let the stump stand a whole yeare: afterward take the
sprouts

sprouts which are sprung out of that stumpe, and graffe them, and cast the others away. Such a stump is like to bear, and therefore nourish as many sprouts as you please: but if it be a wild stump, grafted garden sprouts upon it.

9 If you graffe a sprout or bough upon a Hawthorne tree, that same bough will grow great, and the stumpe will remaine small, therefore he that will impe upon such a tree, see he cut it off by the roote, then will the imped sprout and the stumpe grow all of one thickeesse: but you must have still regard that you Impe kinde upon kinde, as apples upon apples, peares upon peares: for he that graffeth strange upon strange, as peares upon apples, and apples on peares, and such like, although it be don often for pleasures sake, yet will it not last: for the naturall nourishment is so, that it will hardly nourish a strange kinde of fruit.

10 The tree which is grafted in February, in his fruits grow nowormes nor maggots.

11 When the imping sprouts begin to prosper, and will not grow streight and leuell, then you must constrain them perforce, that they may grow orderly. Furthermore you must have a care to keepe the prospering sprouts well with sticks from the wind, if they stand any thing high, and especially when they have stood a yeare or two, and where they are pricked in the stump, it is most needfull, as shall after appeare. And because there be many and diuers waies to graffe and know how wild stumps & trees are to be made garden trees, we thought it good to set some of them here downe.

Divers

Divers fashions and waies of graffing there be.

HE that will extraordinarily graffe all manner of trees, he must know that the more one tree is liker another, the better it will prosper.

The first sort of graffing is, when the sprout is prickt between the barke and the wood of the stump; which must be don in May or Aprill, when the bark may easily be loosed from the tree, and is done after this sort.

First take a stump or tree, and cut him off with a sharp Saw, knife, or such like instrument, where he is smoothest and clearest, and full of juice, and polish the place with the barke of the same tree which was cut off. Afterward tie the stump with a peece of barke, and then prick a hole between the bark of the tree with a prick of bone, elderwood, or yron, so that it cleave not, and then put in the place of the pricke, the sprout, which you must have broken off a plaine and even tree, of a good kinde, and one yeare old, which you shall know by this: every branch have rinckled knots like the joynt of a mans finger, cut it at one side under the knot, so that you touch not the heart of the tree: and at the other side you must softly loose the barke, that the sprout may ioyne very close to the stump, then pull out the prick and take the sprout, and turn the Greene barke to the barke of the stump, so that it may stand strait.

The sprout may be foure or five fingers, or eight at the most, high above the stump.

Of this sort of imping, you may see two, three, or more, according to the bignesse of the stump, or as he

he can beare, provided alwaies that they stand at the least the length of a finger one from another.

Afterward tie it fast (with bark) together, and put over it good mucke, and tie over it a cloath, that no raine or aire may come between it and hurt it. This sort of imping is commonly used in stumps, which are great and old trees, whose barke is thicke and strong as apple trees, pear trees, cherry trees, and willow trees, on which are impd oftentimes apples, also on figge trees, and chestnut trees.

Such grafting is also done in high stumps, and branches, which be great, but they must be well kept from the wind, that it do not breake them.

After this sort you may graft many sorts and kinds of pears upon one tree, but if you bring peares upon apples, or apples upon peares stumps, it will not last long, as afore is said.

The first way of grafting prospereth best, and hath a good continuance, there be many other sorts of grafting, as followeth.

Another way of grafting is, when the stumps are cloven, and the sprouts afterwards are put in, the which doe as followeth.

Take a yong tree which is scant of the bignes of a finger, and cut it smooth and even, & cleave it in the midst, then take the sprout which you wil impe, and cut it three square, and at the one side leave the barke uncut, and then turne the same barke outward at the stump, and tie it fast as I have taught, that the wind nor raine hurt him nor.

Otherwise.

When the stump is uncovered and clean burnisht

at the soft place, then tie him fast, that he cleave no further than to the length of your sprout, which you must graffe upon him, and then leave the prick in it, then make your sprout pointed like a pricke, so that the middle be not touched, then put it into the cleft, having clenfed the hole first with the point of a knife, so that one bark may touch the other, and outward one wood another, to the end the moisture may have the more easier his course, then pull out the pricke, and that which remaines open and bare between the cleft and the sprout, that bind well every where with the barke of the tree, or with hard pressing with a little sand, or with dung of an oxe, or with waxe, or with a linnen cloth washed in waxe, that no raine, winde, or wormes may hurt it. This helpeth much to keep the moistnes in, which cometh from the root, that it cannot breake out, but nourisheth the better the new plant : but when the stumps are great, they bee cleaved after two waies. The first is, that you cut or cleave the tree with a knife at one side only, even to the heart, and that you graft into it but one sprout. The other is, that you cleave it all over, and that you prick or graft on every side one sprout, or one alone, and leave the other side without.

When the stumpe is but a little bigger, then the sprout must necessarily be cloven in two, and you must graft but one sprout into it, as is said in the beginning.

This cleaving may be done in February, March, and Aprill, then it is good to cut them before they be Greene, for to keepe them the better under the ground, in cold or moist places.

The

The third way of grafting.

THis sort of grafting is very subtile, witty, and ready, and is done as followeth.

Go to a smooth apple or peare tree, in April, when the trees get liquor, and seeke a branch which hath greene eies, and see that the same be lesse than your little finger, and teare it from the tree, and where you see that the greene sprouts will come off, there cut them off wholly, and clense the middle thereof, that the little red at the wood may turne about, and draw it not off, untill you come unto another good peare or apple tree, and seeke there another branch of the same bignesse that the other was, and cut it off, and take from it likewise the red, as far as you will put them againe, and looke where the branches join, that they may well fit together upon the top, and tie the same place gently and well with a little barke, behinde and before, that the water may not hurt them: in the first yeare it bringeth forth leaves and branches, in the second, floures, which you may break off, for the sprout is yet too tender, so that it may beare no fruit, and in the third yeare it bringeth floures and fruit, and by this meanes you may graft divers kinds of pears and apples vpon one tree. I have likewise set such sprouts upon wilde stumps, and they have prospered.

The fourth way of grafting is,

How buds are transported and bound upon another tree, like as a plaister is tied to a mans body: this sort of grafting is called in Latine *Emplastrum*. Wee read of such a sort of grafting which is called in Latine *Abducellum*, and it is much like unto this sort, wherefore we will only speake of it, being done after this sort.

When

When you see upon a great fruitfull bough, a bud which will prosper without doubt, and wouldst faine plant it upon another tree, take a sharp knife, and lift the bark up two fingers bredth, that the bud be not hurt, then go to another tree, upon the which you will graft, and put into a convenient place, a like hole into the barke, and put the same bud with the bark into it, and tie it with dung (or with a clout which hath lien in a dunghill) over the cut, that it may be kept from the outward damage of weather, and for an especiall nourishment and keeping of the inner juice: then cut off the branches round about it, that the mother may the better nourish the new son: within twenty daies after take away the band, so that you see that the strange bud hath prospered and joined himselfe with the tree. This may be done in March when the bark commeth easily from the tree. Also in April, May, and Iune, and yet she prospereth both before and after a time, when you may conveniently find such buds.

This sort of planting prospereth best in a willow tree or such like, which is pierced through; and is done after this sort.

The fifth way.

When you pierce a willow stick with a sharp piercer, see that betweene every hole be left the space of one foot, and prick therein branches a little scraped, and put the sticke into a ditch, so that the branches stand upright, one part of the sticke remaining over the earth; and within a yeare after take it out of the ditch, and cut the stick a sunder, so find you the branches full of roots, and put euery one into a hole in the ground, and 'tis fit the holes were stopped with lome, or with wate.

Some

Some do take in March a fresh Beech tree, which is of a mans thickeſſe, and pierce him ouerthwart with maine and great holes and ſmall holes till unto the lowermoſt barke, or quite through: then take ſprouts or boughes, which be as big and ſmall, that they may fit into the holes: and when you will put them into the Beech ſtump, you muſt ſcrape the uppermoſt barke off, untill the greene, and no further: then the bough muſt remaine into the beech, the ſprouts muſt ſtand a foot or ſomewhat leſſe aſunder, then keep your beech ſtump with the ſprouts in a freſh ground, and ſkant a foot deep, you muſt firſt maime the ſprouts, that they may not flouriſh; then the next March enſuing, dig it out with the ſprouts, and cut it aſunder with a ſaw, and every block which is cut off with his branch, you muſt ſet in a freſh ground, and ſo they will bring forth the fruit the ſame yeare.

The ſixth Way.

This way teacheth how to graffe, that they may bring forth fruit the firſt yere, which do as follows.

Pare an old ſtump of what kind ſoever it be, the uppermoſt bark till to the lower green barke, a ſpan long or ſomewhat leſſe, which doe in harveſt in the wane of the Moone, and anoint it with Oxe dung and earth, and tie it with barke, and after in March when trees are tranſpoſed from one place to another then cut the ſame branch from the tree, and put it into the ground, and it wil bring fruit the ſame yere. I have ſeene that one hath prickt ſticks on *Alballow* eve, in the earth, and hath pulled them out again upon *Chriſtmas* eve, and put boughes in the holes, and they have prospered and come out.

The seventh.

Pierce the top of a stump, which is not over smal, and draw a barke through it, and maime it with a knife, as far as it standeth on the top, & in eight days after powre water upon it, that the top of the stump may close. This must be done in harvest, and in the March following cut it off from the tree, and bruise the top, & put it with the same earth in other ground.

The eighth Way.

Will you graffe a tree that the fruit bee without stones. Take a sprout & graffe it into a great stump, with the thicker and lower part of the sprout, then take the upper or thinner end of the sprout, and cut it also fit to be grafted, and turne it downeward, and graffe it into the said stump, and when the sprout of both sides prospereth, cut it in the midst asunder, so that which is grown right upward with the tree, the fruit of it hath stones, but that which was the top of the sprout that groweth contrary, brings forth fruit without stones. And if so be the turned sprout prosper, you must break off the other, to the end that the turned sprout doe not perish, which you may try after this sort: for oftentimes it commeth and prospereth, and many times it is perished and spoiled.

How Cherries are to bee grafted, that they may come without stones.

Will you make that Cherries grow without stones? pare a little Cherry tree of one yere old at the stump, and cleave it asunder from the top to the root, which do in May, and make an Iron fit to draw the heart or marow from both sides of the tree; then

then tie it fast together and anoint it with Ox dung or lome, and within a yeare after, when it is growne and healed, goe to another little tree which is of the same kind, and which hath not yet brought fruit, and geasse that same on the little tree, so shall that same tree bring his fruit without stones.

How a Vine is to be planted upon a Cherry tree.

PLant a Vine tree next unto a Cherry tree, and when it groweth high, then pierce a hole into the Cherry tree right above it, that the hole bee no bigger than the Vine is thick, and pare the upper barke of the Vine branch till unto the greene, so farre as it must go through the tree, & looke well to it that the branch of the Vine bee not bruised, and well anointed. You must not suffer any sprouts to come out of the vine from the ground up, but unto the tree only, that which commeth out of the other side, let that same grow and bring fruit. Then the next March following, if the Vine prosper and grow fast into the tree, then cut the Vine from the tree off, and anoint the place with diligence, and it will bring fruit.

How a grape of a Vine may be brought into a glasse.

Will you make that a grape grow into a narrow glasse? take the glasse before the grape cast her bloud, or while she is little, and put her into the glasse, and she will ripen in the glasse.

To graffe Medlers on a Peare tree.

IF you graffe a branch of a Medler upon a Peare tree, the Medlers will be sweet and durable, so that you may keep them longer than otherwise.

How apples or other fruits may be made red.

IF you will graft upon a wild stump, put the sprouts in Pikes bloud, and then graft them, and the fruit will be red.

Otherwise.

Take an apple branch, and graft it upon an alder stump, and the apples will be red. Likewise if you graft them upon cherry trees.

Of the Quince tree.

THE Quince tree commeth not of any grafting, but you must plucke him out by the roots, and plant him againe into a good ground or earth.

Otherwise.

The Quince tree requireth a dry & sweet ground, and he prospereth therein.

How to make that Quinces become great.

TAKE a branch of a Quince tree when it hath cast his bloud where a Quince groweth at, and put it into a pot, and set it into the ground, and let the Quince grow in it, and it will be very great.

And if you will shew some cunning therewith, cause to bee made a pot which hath a mans face in the bottome of it, or any other picture whatsoever, and when the quinces have blossomed, then bow the branch, and put the quince into the pot, and she wil grow very bigge, in the shape of a man, which may also be done in pompons, mellons, cucumbers, and other earthly fruits.

The conclusion of grafting.

OVt of all the forewritten causes (gentle reader) is evidently shewne, that although every planting or grafting be better from like to like, and from kinde

kinde to kind, yet neverthelesse it agreeth also with contrary kinds, as now is said, wherefore he that will exercise and use the same, and try divers kindes, he may see and make many wonders.

What toy and fruit commeth of trees.

The first.

THe first is, that you plant divers & many kinds: for every householder who hath care to his nourishment, with all diligence causeth oftentimes, such trees to be brought from forrein countries.

The second.

The second is, when the trees bee planted and set orderly and pleasantly, they give no small pleasure to a man, therefore every one should cut his trees orderly, and he that cannot, should procure other men to do it, which know how to do it.

The third is of well smelling and spiced fruit.

Cleave a tree asunder, or a branch of a fruitfull tree, to the heart or pith, and cut a piece out of it, and put therein poudred spices, or what spice soever you will, or what colour you will desire, and tie a barke hard about it, and anoint it with lome and oxe dung, and the fruit will get both the savour and colour according to the spice you have put in it.

How sower fruits be made sweet.

WHich tree beareth sower fruits, in the same pierce a hole a foot or somewhat lesse above the root, and fill that with honey, and stop the hole with a haw-thorne branch, and the fruit will bee sweet.

How trees ought to be kept when they wax old.

WHen trees lose their strength and vertue for age, & the branches break off for the weight of the fruit, or when they wax barren for lack of moisture, that they beare not fruit every yeare, but scant every other or third yeare, you must cut some of his heavy branches, which he can little nourish, which is done to the end hee might keep some moistnesse to himselfe for his nourishment, for else the moistnesse would go all into his branches.

Wheteby you may mark whether you must give them, or take away from them branches, according to their nourishment, and as the earth where thee standeth can abide, that is, you must leave them so much as will nourish them. and no more, which if you doe not, the trees will bring so little fruit, that your labour will not be recompensed.

Which cutting of trees may be done from the beginning of November till to the end of March, in warme countries. But it is more naturall to be done from the time that the leaves fall, till the time that they begin to grow greene againe, except where the frost is very great and sharp.

How trees must be kept from divers sicknesses, and first how to keep them from the Canker.

WHen the Canker commeth in any tree, he becommeth barren and dry, for it mounteth from the stumps into the top, and when it taketh a peare or apple tree, the bark will be black and barren thereabouts, which must be cut off with a knife, to the fresh wood, and then the place must be anointed with Oxe dung, and tied with barke, so that neither wind nor rain may hurt it.

Against

Against worms which must be driven out of the tree.

IT happeneth oftentimes, that the superfluities of moistnesse in the trees breaketh out like as sometimes to a man or beast betweene the flesh and skin: and when that beginneth to rot, wormes grow out of it, which takes his strength away: wherefore mark.

When the barke of a tree at any time swells, cut it presently open that the poison may runne out, and if you find already wormes in it, draw them out with a little yron hooke.

How the wormes are to be killed, if they bee already growne into the tree.

IF you will kill the worms which grow in the tree, take pepper, lawrell, and incense, and mingle all well together with good wine, and pierce a hole into the tree downward, to the pith or heart of the tree, and poure this mixture into it, and stop it with a hawthorne, and the wormes will die.

Otherwise.

Take ashes or dust and mingle it with sallet oyle, anoint the trees therewith, and the wormes will die.

Otherwise.

Take poudred incense when you graffe, and bring it betweene the barke of the stump, which you will graffe, and no wormes will eat the fruit.

When a tree in many places becommeth changable because of wormes, or superfluous humors. Cleave the tree at some end from the top of the stump to the earth, that all the foule liquors may come out and dry. Also when a tree becomes sicke because of evill humors or fault of ground, so that he becommeth worne-eaten, or brings no fruit, take the

the earth away from the root, and put other sweeter in the place, and pierce a great hole in the stump, and put therein a pinne of Oake, and it helpeth.

A remedy against Caterpillers.

ALl kinde of Caterpillers which eat the greene, and blossomes of the tree, doe hurt them very much, so that thereafter may come no fruit.

Therefore their eggs which lie hidden, as it were in a cobwebbe, must diligently be searched, and burned from the boughes, before they bring forth other Caterpillers, which do in December, Ianuary, and February.

Some were wont to breake them off, and tread them with their feet, but therewith they be not wholly killed. The fire consumeth all things, and therefore it is best to burne them.

Against the Pismires or Ants, when they will hurt the yong trees.

CVt the leaves off which are eaten or poisoned of the Ants or Pismires, and where there is any thing made uncleane in the top of the tree, of those little worms, that rub in pieces with your hands, that it may not staine the other leaves, and that the yong sprouts may grow up without any hinderance.

How to keepe the Pismires from the trees.

First make a iuice of an herbe, called *Portabaca*, and mix it with vineger, and sprinckle the stump therewith, or anoint the stumpe with wine dregs. Some take a little weake pitch, but very thinne, that it may not hurt the tree.

Another

Another instruction.

Take a little bundle of cotton,wooll,flax,or towe, and lay it about the stump, and tie likewise a bundle above, about the stump, and draw it out a little, and the Pismires can do no hurt: or put about the stump bird-lime.

In what time of the harvest the fruit must be gathered.

THe fruits are not altogether at one time gathered, for they are not ripe all at once, as some pears which shew the ripeness by the colour, those should be gathered in Summer, and if you let them stand too long, they will not last.

Peares which are ripe in harvest, those may be gathered in October, when the weather is cleare & dry: in harvest in the increase of the moon, fruits may be gathered.



A short instruction very profitable and necessary for all those that delight in gardening, to know the times and seasons when it is good to sow and replant all manner of seeds.

CAbbages must be sowne in February, March, or April, at the waning of the Moone, and replanted also in the decrease thereof.

Cabbage Lettuce, in February, March, or Iuly, in an old Moone.

Onions and Leeks must be sowne in February or March, at the waning of the moone.

D

Beets

Beets must be sowne in February, or March, in a full moone.

Coleworts white and greene in February, or March, in an old moone, it is good to replant them.

Parstneps must be sown in February, April, or Iune, also in an old moone.

Radish must be sown in February, March, or Iune, in a new moone.

Pompions must be sowne in February, March, or Iune, also in a new moone.

Cucumbers and Mellons must be sown in February, March or Iune, in an old moone.

Spinage must be sowne in February or March, in an old moone.

Parsley must bee sowne in February or March, in a full moone.

Fennell and Annisseed must be sown in February or March, in a full moone.

White Cycory must be sown in February, March, Iuly or August, in a full moone.

Cardus Benedictus must be sowne in February, March or May, when the moone is old.

Basill must be sowne in March, when the moon is old.

Purslane must be sowne in February or March, in a new moone.

Margeram, Violets and Time, must bee sowne in February, March or April, in a new moon.

Floure-gentle, Rosemary and Lavander, must bee sowne in February or Aprill, in a new moone.

Rocket and Garden cresses, must be sowne in February in a new moone.

Savell must bee sowne in February or March, in a new moone.

Saffron must be sown in March, when the moone is old.

Coriander and Borage must be sown in February or March, in a new moone.

Hartshorne and Samphire must be sowne in February, March or April, when the moone is old.

Gilly-floures, Harts ease, & Wall-floures, must be sowne in March or April, when the moon is old.

Cardons and Artochokes must be sown in April or March, when the moone is old.

Chickweed must be sowne in February or March, in the full of the moone.

Burnet must be sowne in in February or March, when the moone is old.

Double Marigolds must be sowne in February or March, in a new moone.

Ifop and Savorie must be sowne in March, when the moone is old.

White Poppey must bee sowne in February or March, in a new moone.

Palma Christi must be sowne in February, in a new moone.

Sparages and Sperage is to be sowne in February, when the moone is old.

Larks foot must bee sowne in February, when the moone is old.

Note that at all times and seasons, Lettuce, Radish, Spinage and Parsneps may be sowne.

Note also, from cold are to bee kept Coleworts, Cabbage, Lettuce, Basill, Cardons, Artochokes, and Colefloures.

Worthy remedies and secrets availing against the
stroying of Snails, Cankerwormes, the long
bodied moths, garden fleas, earth-
wormes, and Moles.

Africanus, singular among the Greek writers of husbandry, reporteth, that Garden plants and roots may well be purged and rid of the harmefull wormes, if their dennes or deep holes be smoaked, the winde aiding, with the dung of the Cow or Oxe burned.

That worthy *Pliny* in his first booke of histories writeth, that if the owner or Gardener sprinckleth the pure mother of the oyle Olive, without any salt in it, doth also drive the wormes away, and defend the plants and herbes from being gnawne of them. And if they shall cleave to the roots of the plants, through malice or breeding of the dung, yet this weedeth them clean away. The plants or herbes will not after be gnawne or harmed by garden fleas, if with the naturall remedy, as with the herbe *Rocket*, the Gardener shall bestow his beds in many places.

The Coleworts and all pot-herbs are greatly defended from the gnawing of the garden fleas, by Radish growing among them. The eager or sharp vinegar doth also prevaile, tempered with the juice of Henbane, and sprinckled on the garden fleas. To these, the water in which the herbe *Nigella Romana* shall be steeped for a night, and sprinckled on the plants, as the Greek *Pamphilus* reporteth, doth alike prevaile against the garden fleas.

Paladius Rutilius reporteth, that the noisome vermin or creeping things will not breed of the Pot-herbs,

herbes, if the Gardener shall before the committing to the earth, dry all the seeds in the skin of the Tortoise, or sow the herbe Mint in many places of the garden, especially among the Coleworts. The bitter Fitch and Rocket (as I afore uttered) bestowed among the pot herbs, so that the seeds be sown in the first quarter of the Moone, do greatly availe us. Also the Canker and Palmer worms, which in many places work great injurie both to the gardens & vines, may the owner or gardener drive away with the fig tree ashes sprinckled on them and the herbs.

There be some which sprinckle the plants and herbes made with the lee of the fig. tree ashes, but it destroies the wormes, to strew (as experience reporteth) the ashes alone on them.

There bee others which rather will to plant or sow that big onion, named in Latine *Scilla* or *Squilla* here and there in beds, or hang them in sundry places of the garden.

Others also will to fix river Cresses with nailes in many places of the garden, which if they shal yet withstand or contend with all these remedies, then may the Gardener apply to exercise this devise, in taking the Ox or Cow urine, and the mother of oile Olive, which after the well mixing together, and heating over the fire, the same be stirred about until it be hot, and when through cold, this mixture shall be sprinckled on the pot. herbs and trees, doth marvellously prevaile, as the skilfull *Anatolius* of experience reporteth.

The worthy *Paladius Rutilius* reporteth, that if the owner or Gardener burne great bundles of the Garlicke blades (without heads) dried, through all the

allies of the Garden, and unto these the dung of Backes added, that the fauour of the smoke (by the helpe of the wind) may be driven to many places, especially to those where they most abound & swarm, and the Gardener shall see so speedy a destruction, as is to be wondred at.

The worthy *Pliny* of great knowledge reporteth, that these may be driven from the pot-herbes, if the bitter Fitch seeds be mixed and sown together with them, or the branches of the trees, Crevises hanged up by the hornes in many places, doth like prevaile. These also are letted from increasing, yea they in heaps presently gathred are destroyed, as the Greeks report of observation, if the Gardener by taking certaine Palmer or Canker-wormes out of the Garden next ioyning, shall seeth them in water with Dill, and the same being through cold, shall sprinckle on the herbes and trees, that the mixture may wet and soke through the nests, euen unto the young ones, cleaving together, that they may taste thereof, will speedily dispatch them. But in this doing, the Gardener must bee very wary, and haue an attentive eye, that none of the mixture fall on his face or hands.

Besides these, the owner or Gardener may use this remedy certain, and easily prepared, if about the big armes of trees, or stums of the herbes, he kindle and burne the stronger lime and brimstone together. Or if the owner make a smoake with the Mushromes, growing under the Nut tree, or burne the hoofes of Goats, or the gum *Galbanum*, or else make a smoake with the Harts horne, the winde aiding, by blowing towards them.

The husbandmen and gardeners in our tunc have
found

found out this easie practise, being now common every where: which is on this wise, that when these after showres of raine are copen into the warm sun, or into places standing against the sunne, early in the morning shake either their fruits and leaves of the pot-herbs, or the boughes of the trees, for these being yet stiffe, through the cold of the night, are procured of the same, the lighter and sooner to fall, not able after to recover up againe, so that the Palmer worms thus lying on the ground, are then in a readinesse to be killed of the Gardener.

If the owner mind to destroy any other creeping things noyous to herbes and trees, (which *Paladius* and *Ratilius* name, both herb and Leek wasters) then let him hearken to this invention and devise of the Greeke *Dyophanes*, who willeth to purchase the maw of a Weather sheep new killed, and the same as yet full of his excrementall filth, which lightly cover with the earth in the same place, where these most haunt in the Garden, and after two daies shall the Gardener find there, that the mothes with long bodies, and other creeping things will bee gathered in divers companies to the place right ouer it, which the owner shall either remove and carry further, or dig and bury very deep in the same place, that they may not after arise and come forth, which when the Gardener shall have exercised the same but twise or thrise, he shall utterly extinguish, and quite destroy all the kinds of creeping things that annoy & spoile the Garden plants.

The husbandmen in Flanders arme the stockes, and compasse the bigger armes of their trees, with wisps of straw handsomely made and fastened or bound

bound about, by which the Palmer wormes are constrained to creep up to the tops of the trees, & there staid, so that, (as it were by snares and engines laid) these in the end are driven away, or thus in their way begun, are speedily or soone after procured to turne backe againe. As unto the remedies of the Snailles particularly belongs. These may the Gardener likewise chase from the kitchin herbs, if he either sprinkle the new mother of the oyle olive, or foot of the chimney on the herbes, as if he bestowed the bitter sitch in beds among them, which also avails against other noysome wormes, and creeping things, as I afore uttered, that if the Gardener would possesse a greene and delectable garden, let him then sprinkle diligently all the quarters, beds, and borders of the Garden, with the mixture of water and poudre of Fenny-greeke tempered together, or set upright in the middle of the garden, the whole bare head without the flesh of the unchaste Ass, as I afore wrote.

*Excellent inventions and helps against
the garden Moles.*

THe skilfull *Paxanus* hath left in writing, that if the Gardener shall make hollow a big nut, or bore a hollow hole into some sound piece of wood being narrow, in filling the one or the other with Rosin, Pitch, Chasse and Brimstone, of each so much as shall suffice to the filling of the Nut, or hollow hole in the wood, which thus prepared in a readiness, stop every where with diligence, all the goings forth, and breathing holes of the mole, that by those the fuming smoke in no manner may issue out, yet so

so handle the matter, that one mouth and hole bee only left open, and the same so large, that well the nut or vessel kindled within, may be laid within the mouth of it, wherby it may take the wind of the one side, which may so send in the favour both of the rosin and brimstone into the hollow tombe, or resting place of the Mole: by the same practise so workemanly handled, by filling the holes with the smoke, shall the owner or Gardener either drive quite away all the Moles in the ground, or finde them in short time dead.

There bee some that take the white Neesewort, or the rinde of *Cynocrambes* beaten and farced, and with Barley meale and egges finely tempered together, they make both Cakes and Pasties wrought with wine and milke, and those they lay within the Moles denne or hole.

Albertus of worthy memory reporteth, that if the owner or Gardener closeth or diligently stoppeth the mouths of the Moleholes, with the garlick, onion, or leeke, it shall either drive the Moles away, or kill them, through the strong favour stinking or breathing into them.

Many there be, that to drive away these harmefull Moles, do bring up yong Cats in their Garden ground, and make tame Weasels, to the end, that either of these through the hunting of them, may so drive away this pestiferous annoyance, being taught to watch at their streit passages, and mouthes of the holes comming forth.

Others there bee also which diligently fill and stop up their holes with the red Okare or Ruddell, and juice of the wild Cucumber, or sow the seeds of

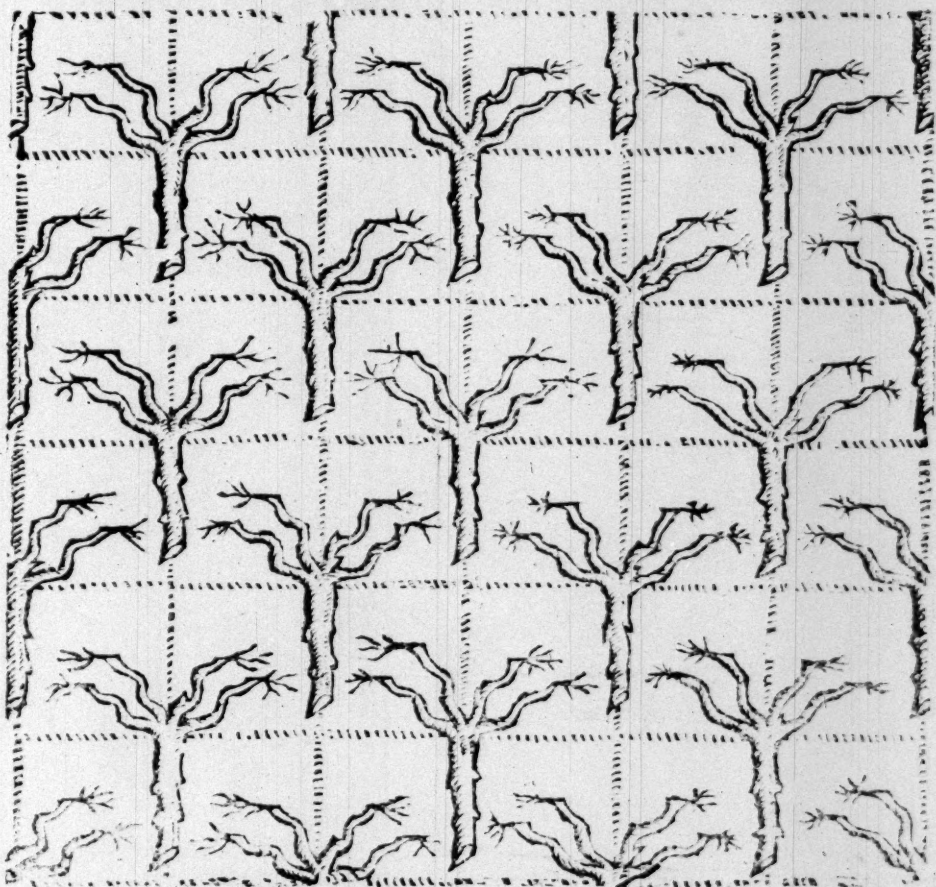
Palma Christi, being a kind of *Satyrion*, in beds, through which they will not after cast up, nor tarry thereabout.

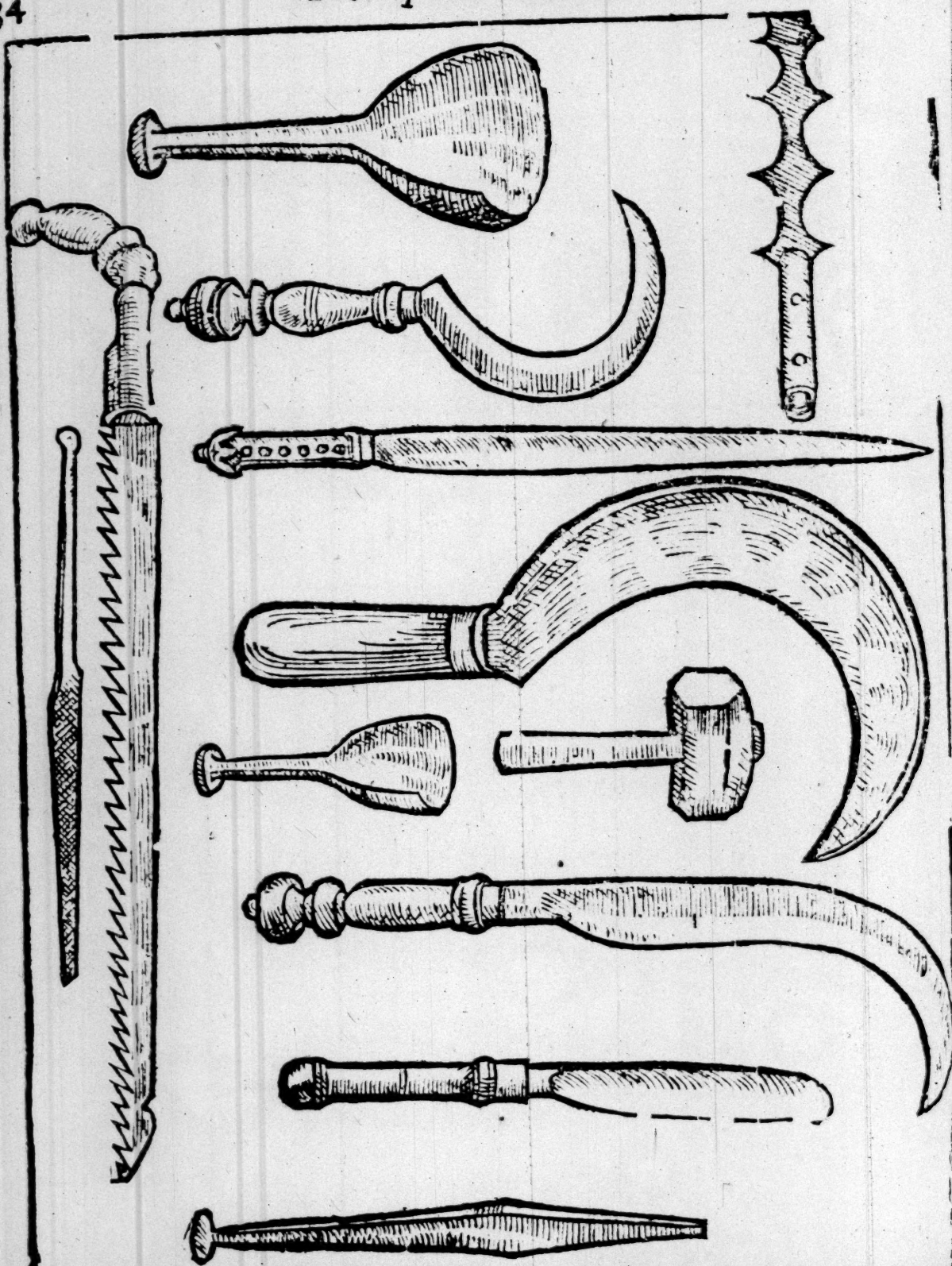
But some exercise this easie practise, in taking a live Mole, and burning the powder of brimstone about him, being in a deep earthen pot, through which he is procured to cry, all others in the meane time as they report, are mooved to resort thither.

There are some besides, which lay silke snares at the mouth of their holes.

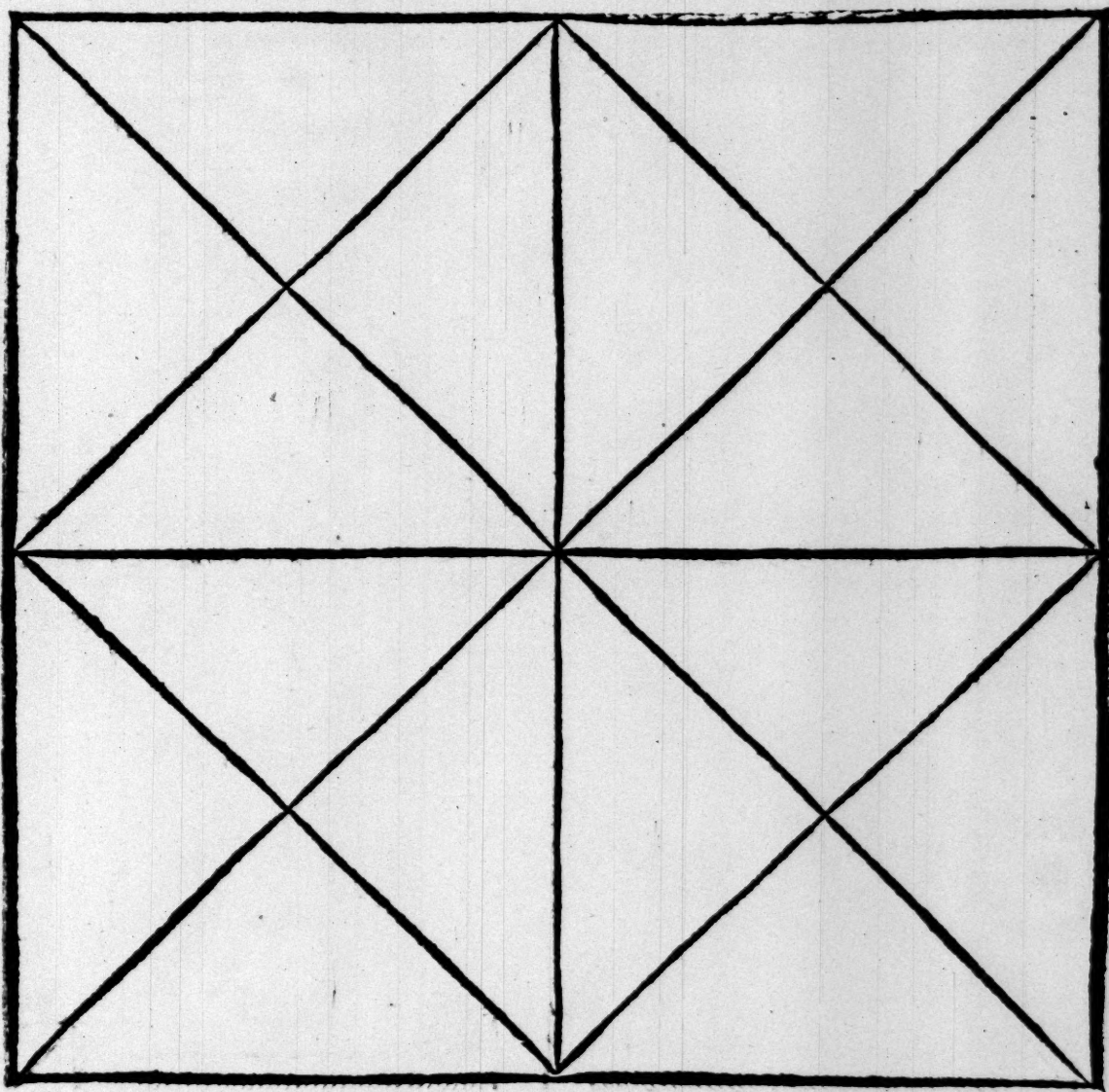
To the simple husbandmen may this easie practise of no cost suffice, in setting downe into the earth a stiffe rod or greene branch of the Elder tree.

FINIS.



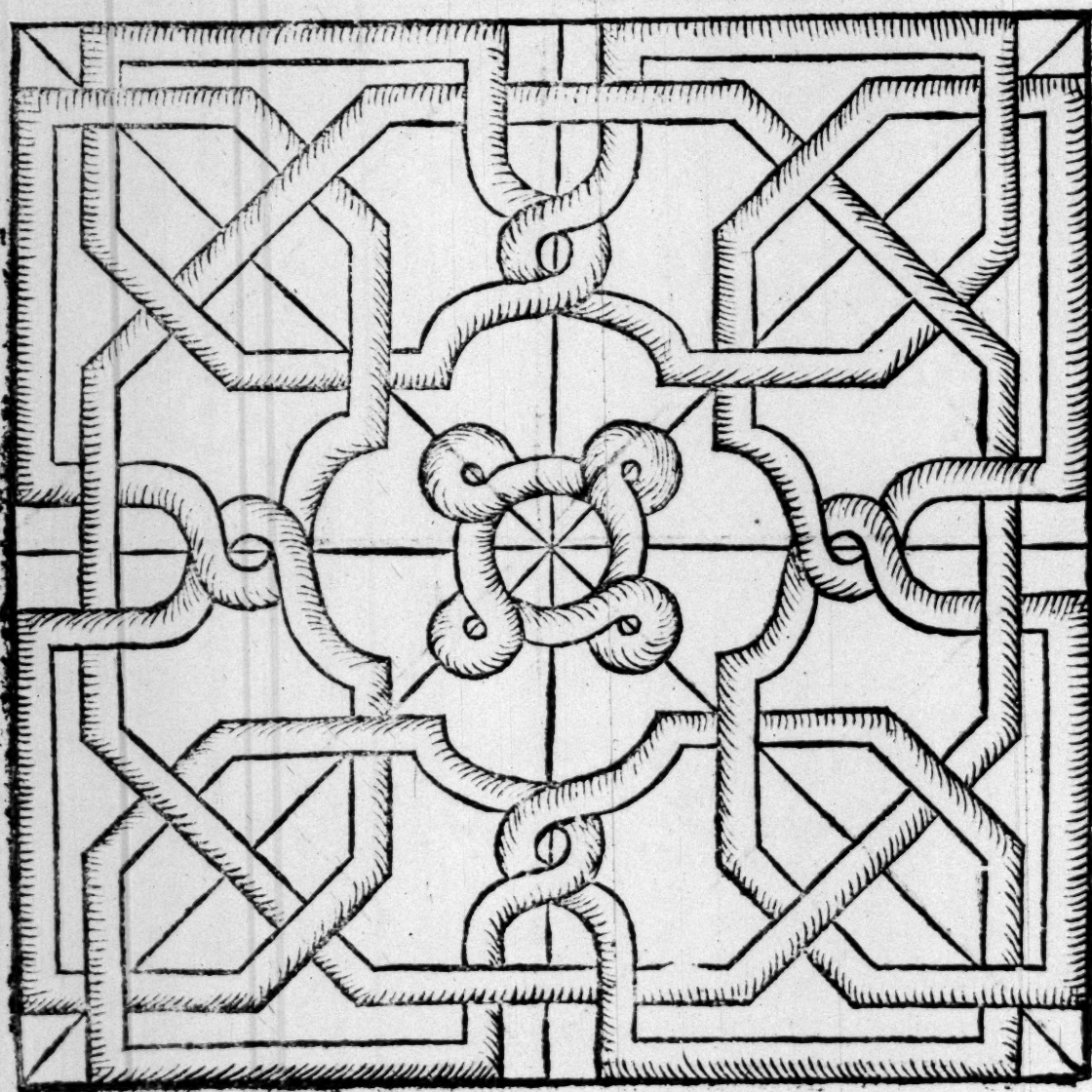


A Direction to set or lay your lines or thread to make or draw a simple Knot, without a border.

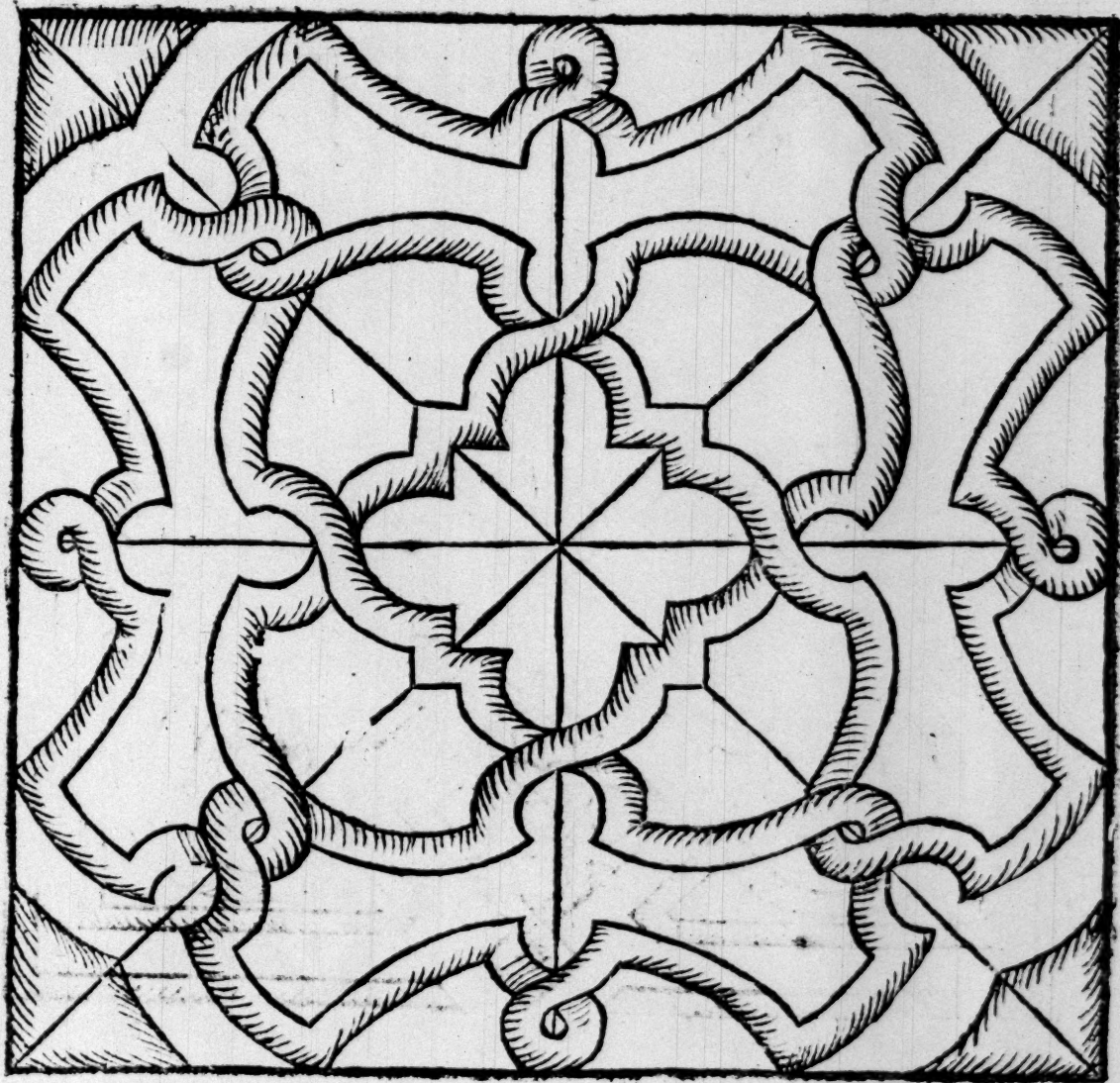


You must leave your Lines as they be first set, untill your Knot be altogether finished or done.

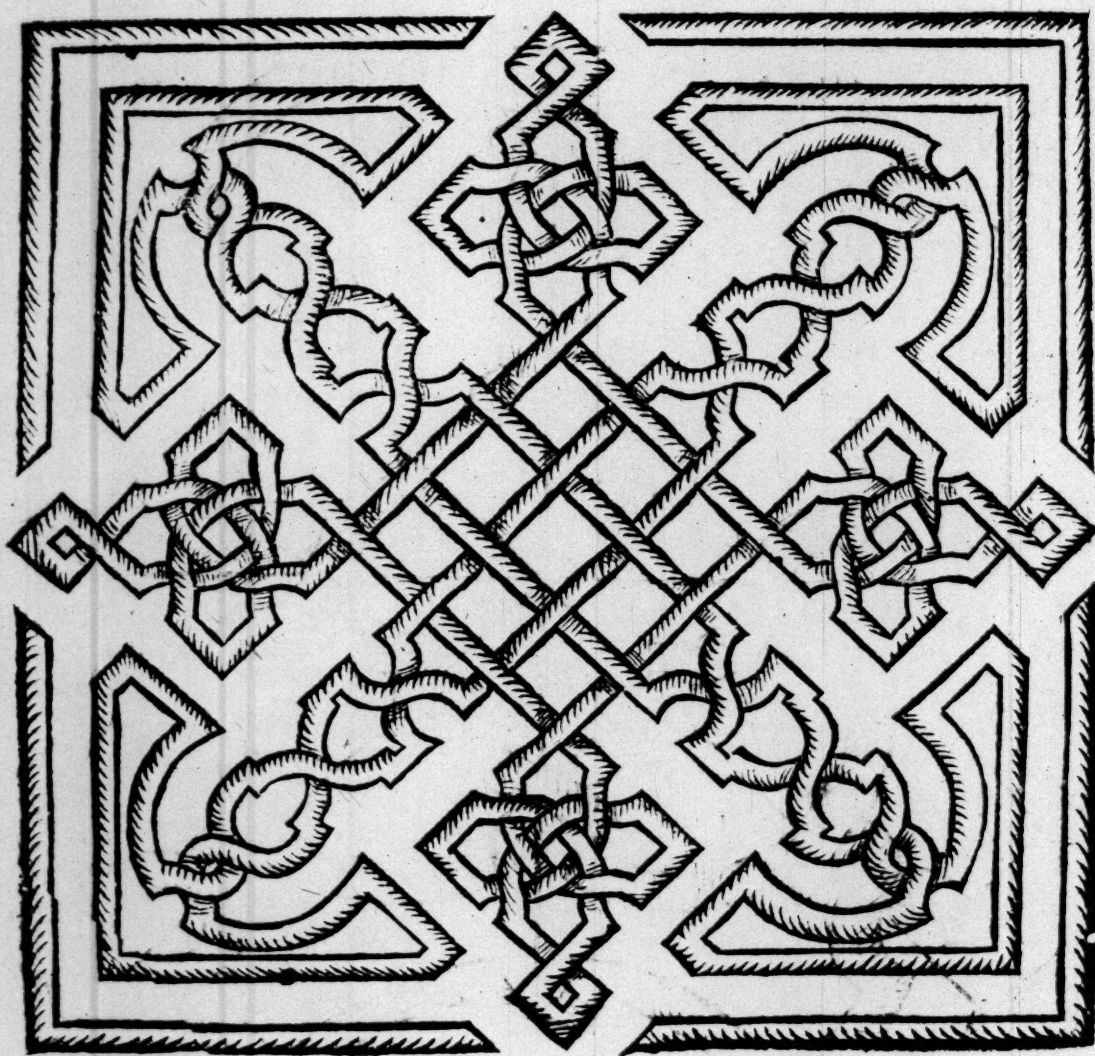
The Manner or Ordering to set the thread
or line upon another manner of Knot.



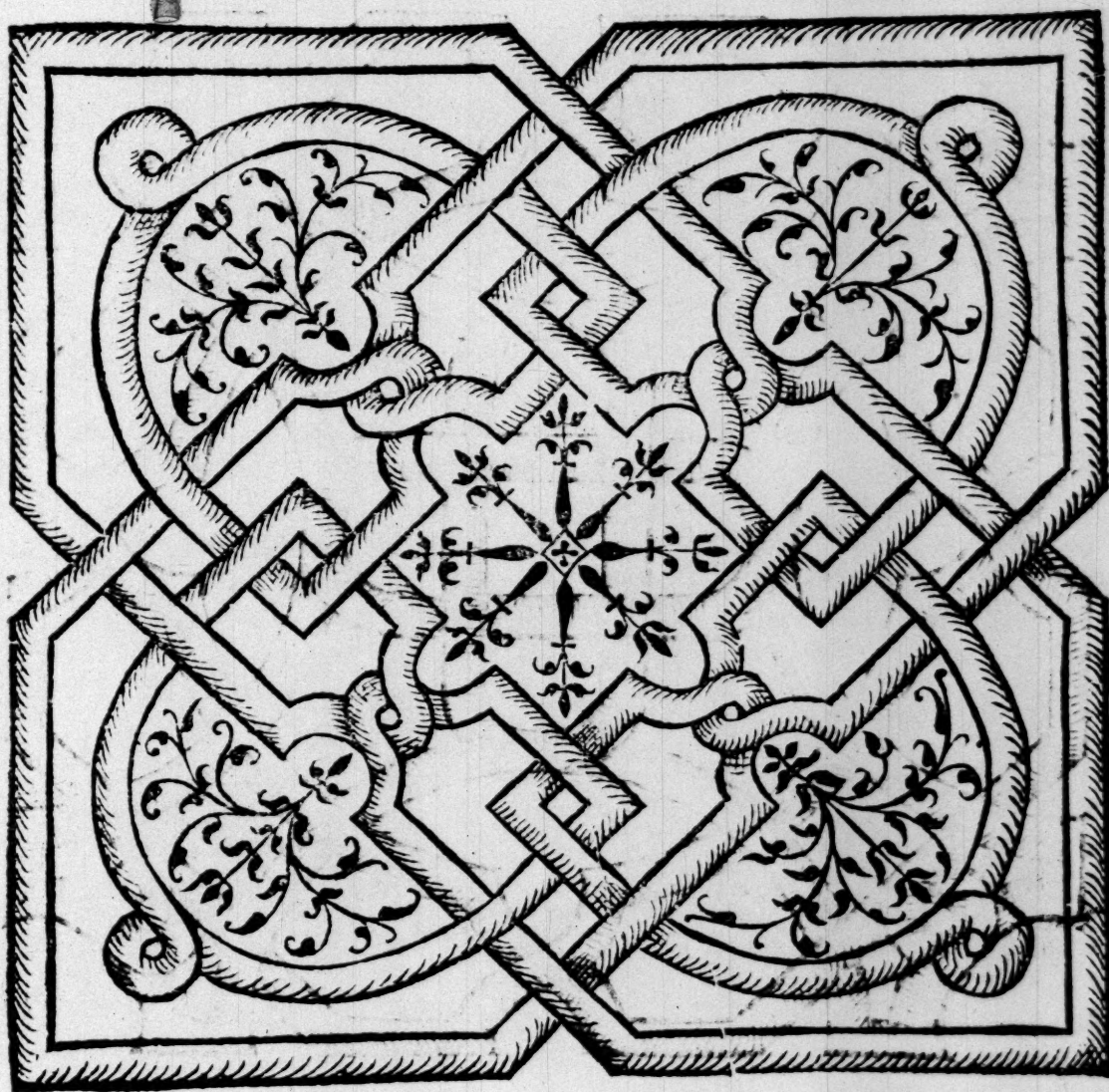
A Direction to fasten your Lines to make
another manner of Knot.



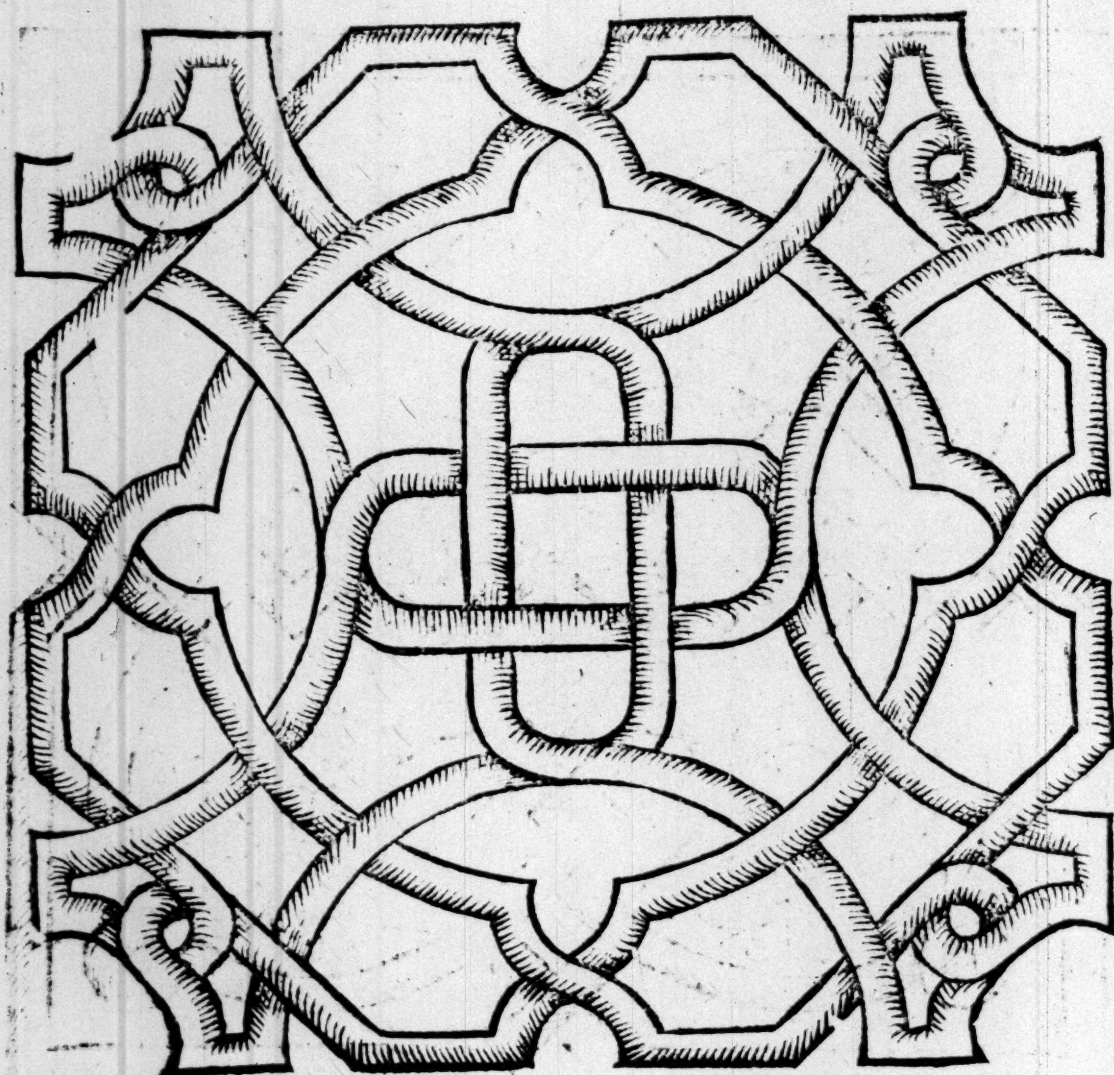
A plaine Knot without Lines.



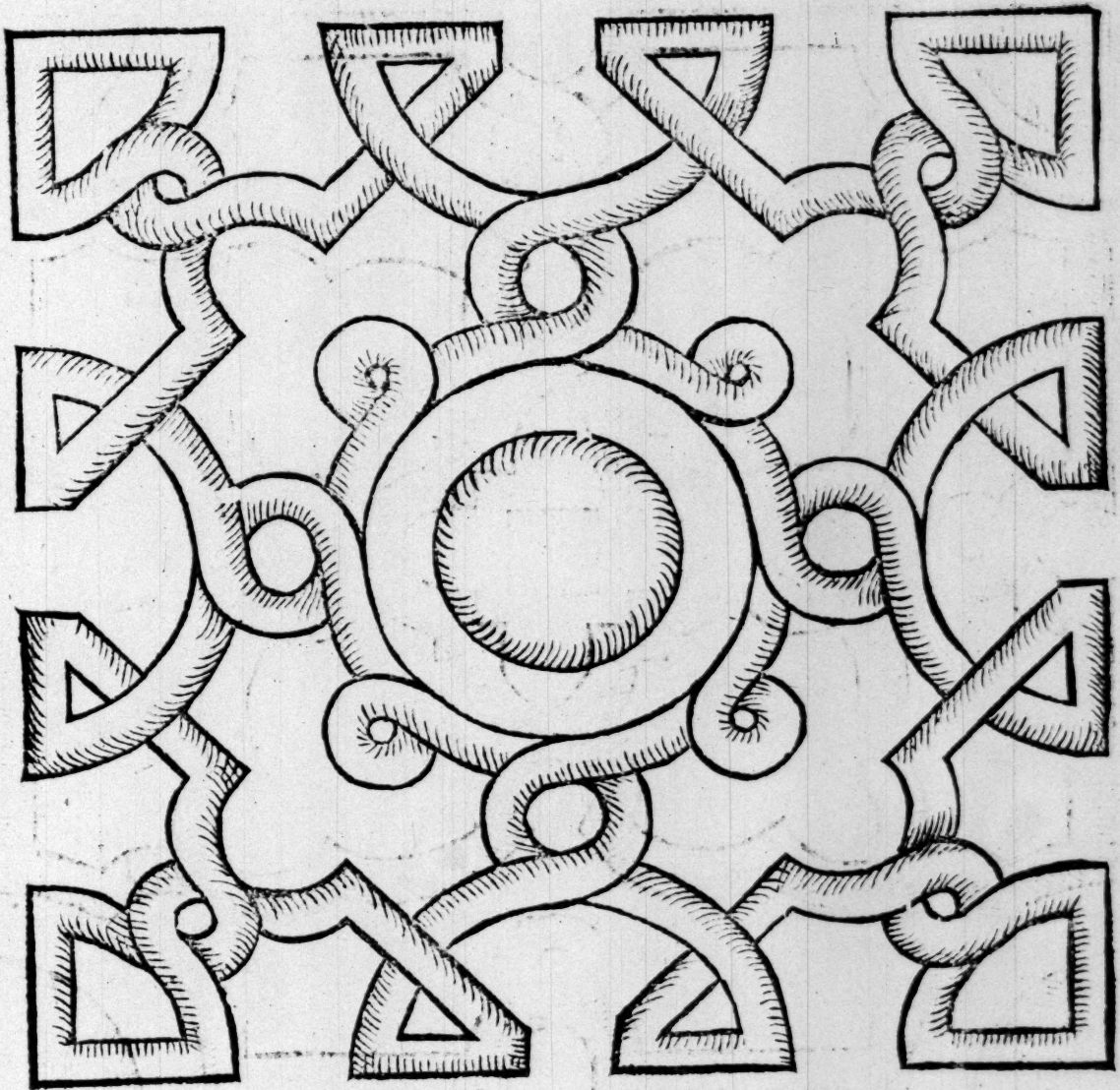
A plaine Knot without Lines.



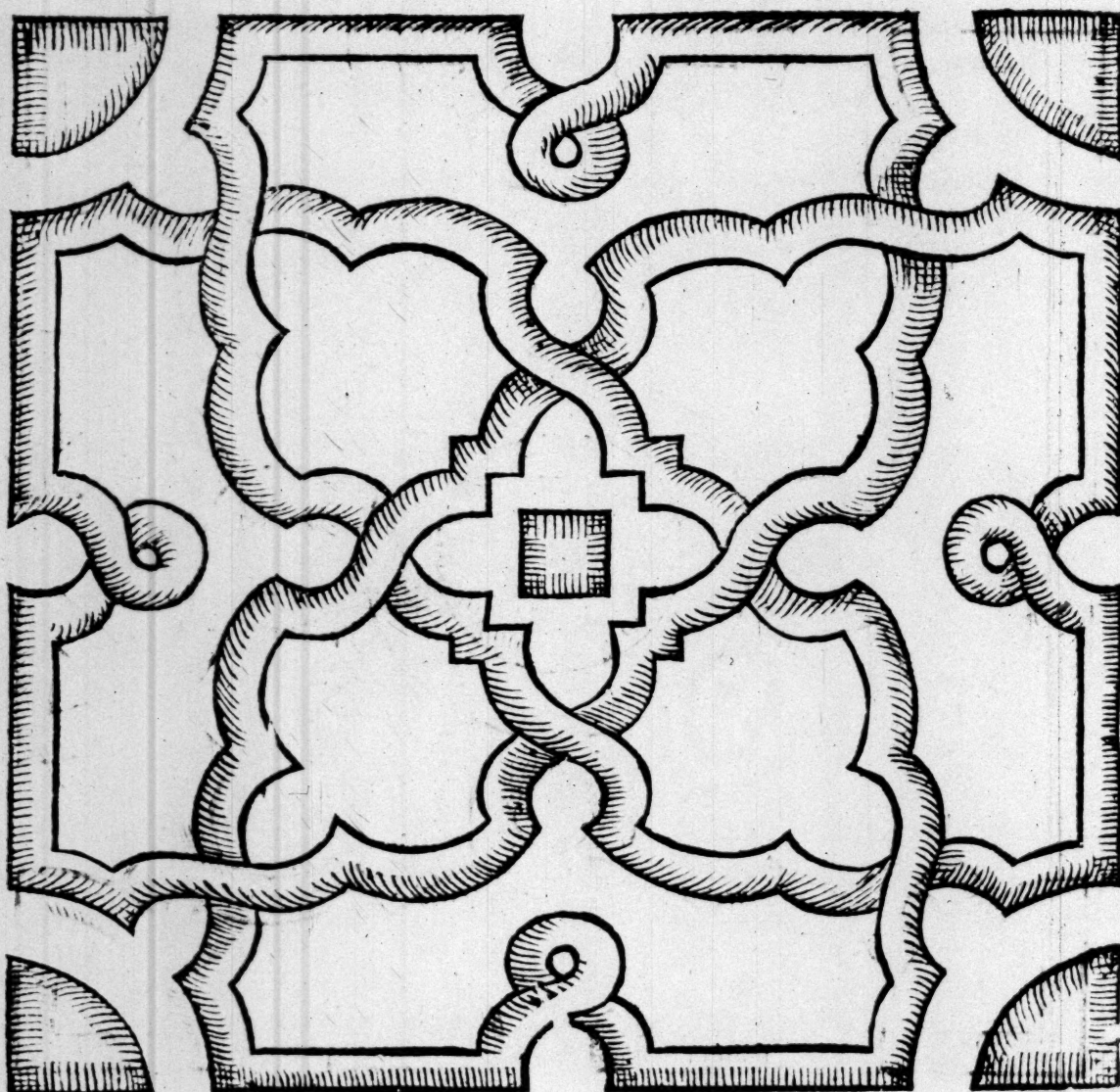
Another plaine Knot without Lines.



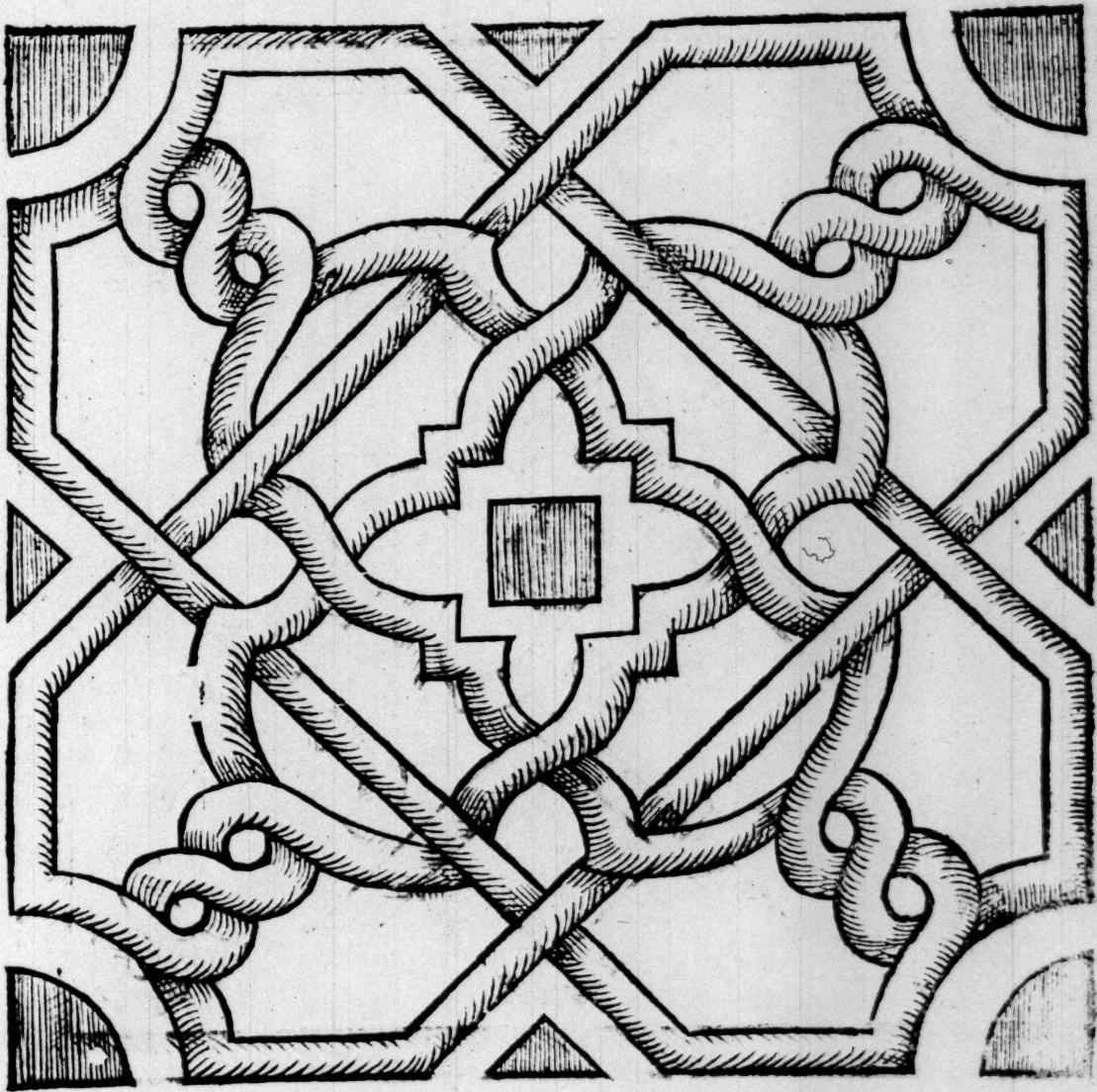
Another.



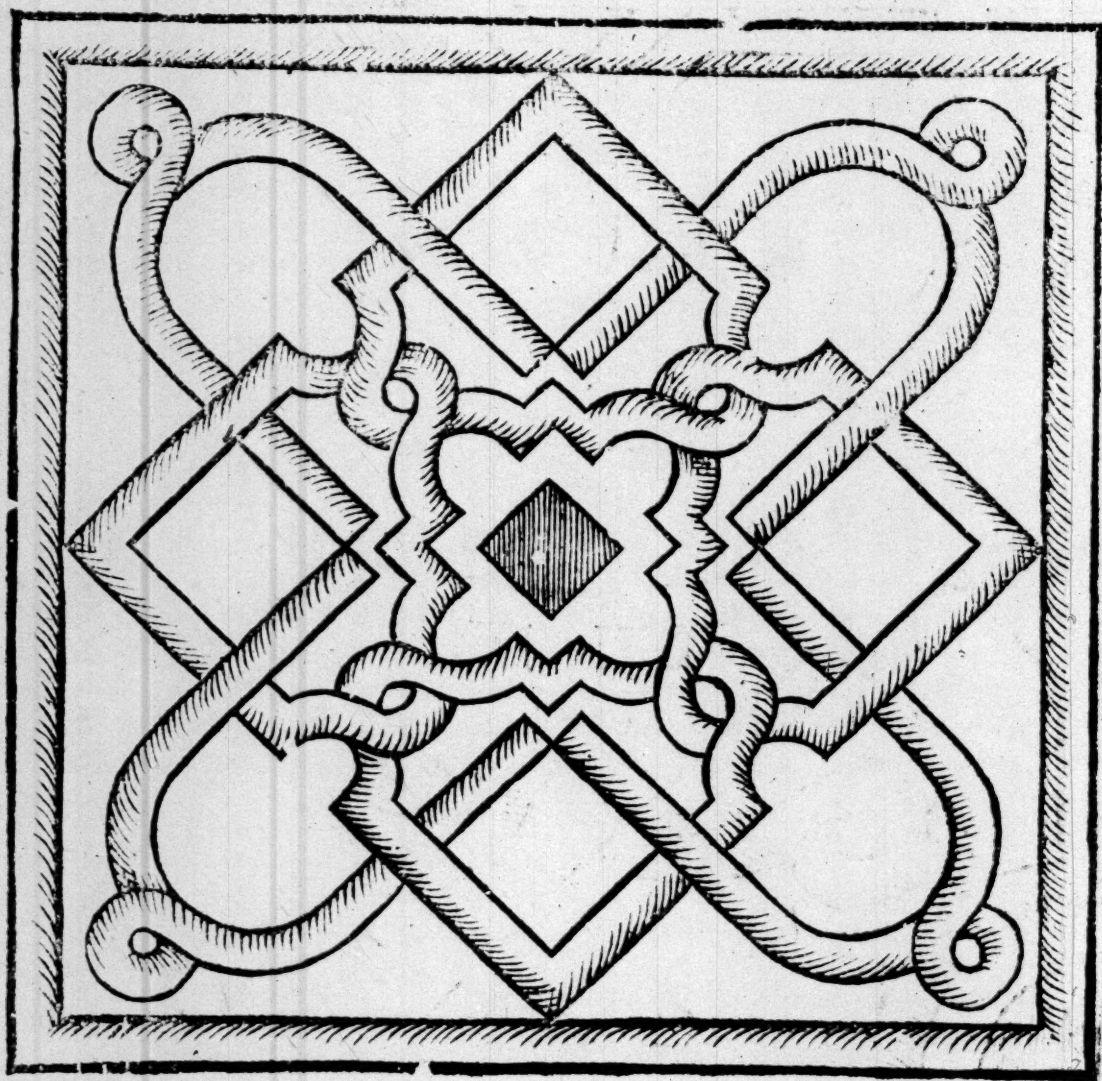
Another.



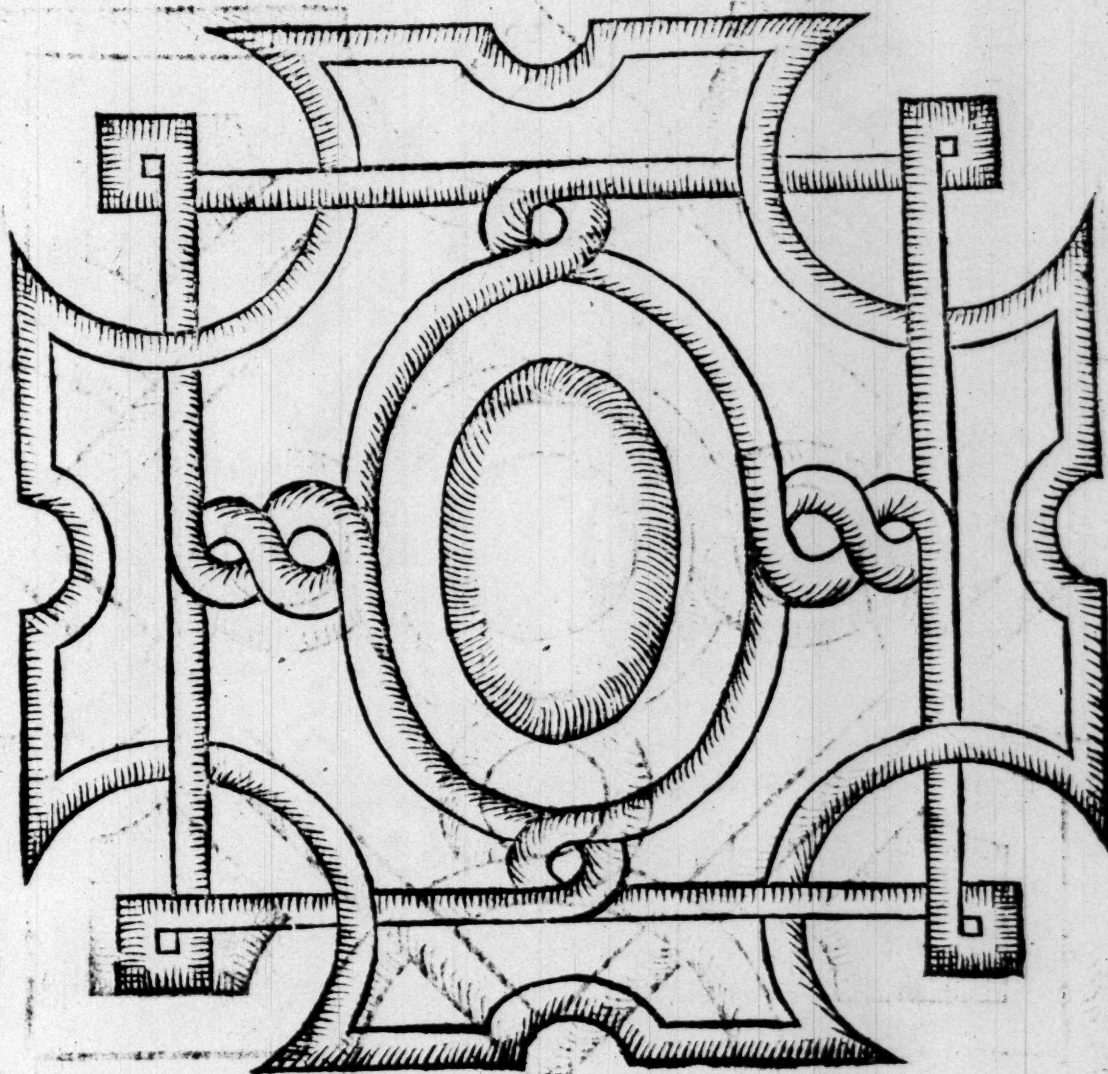
Another.



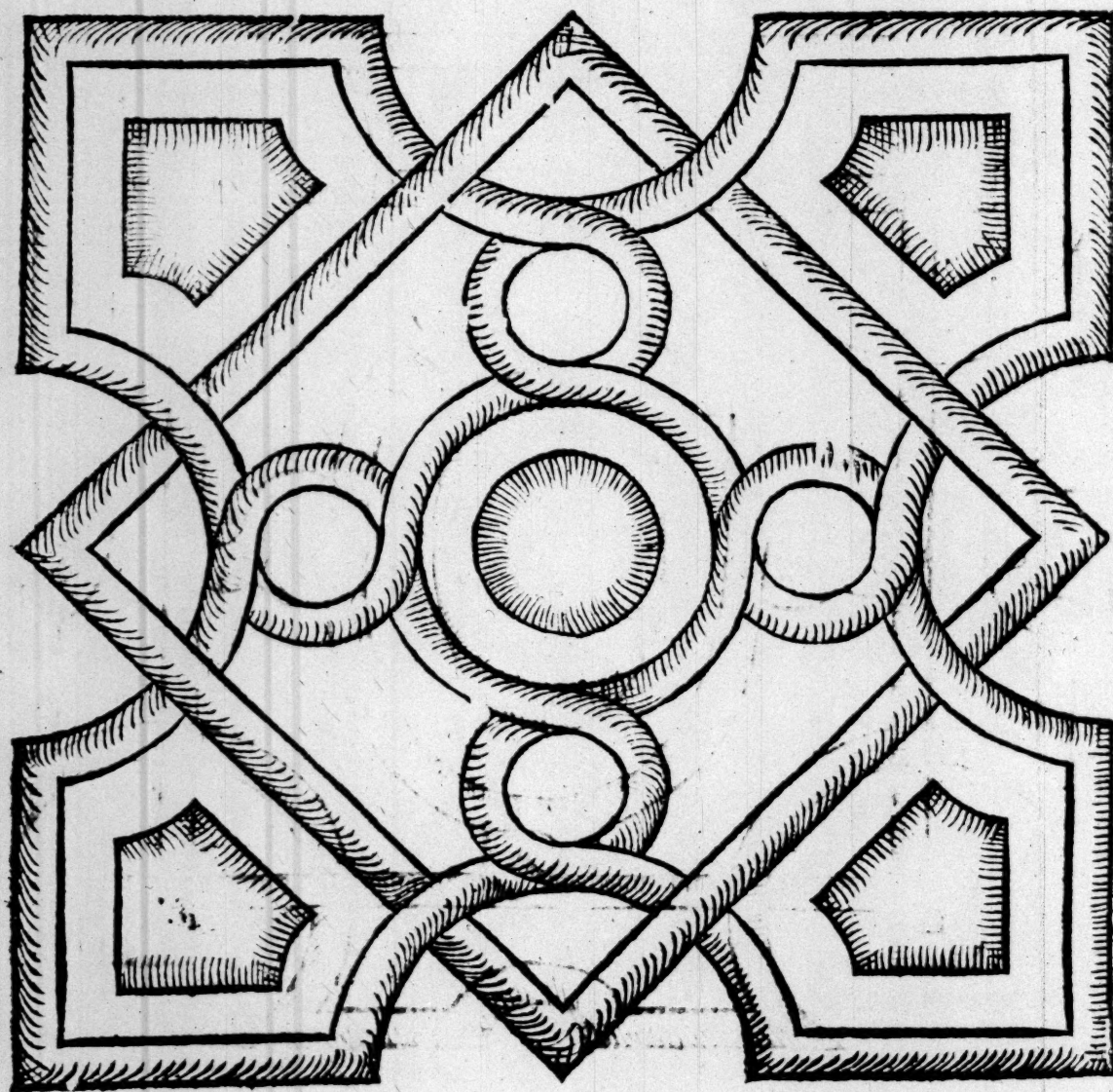
Another.



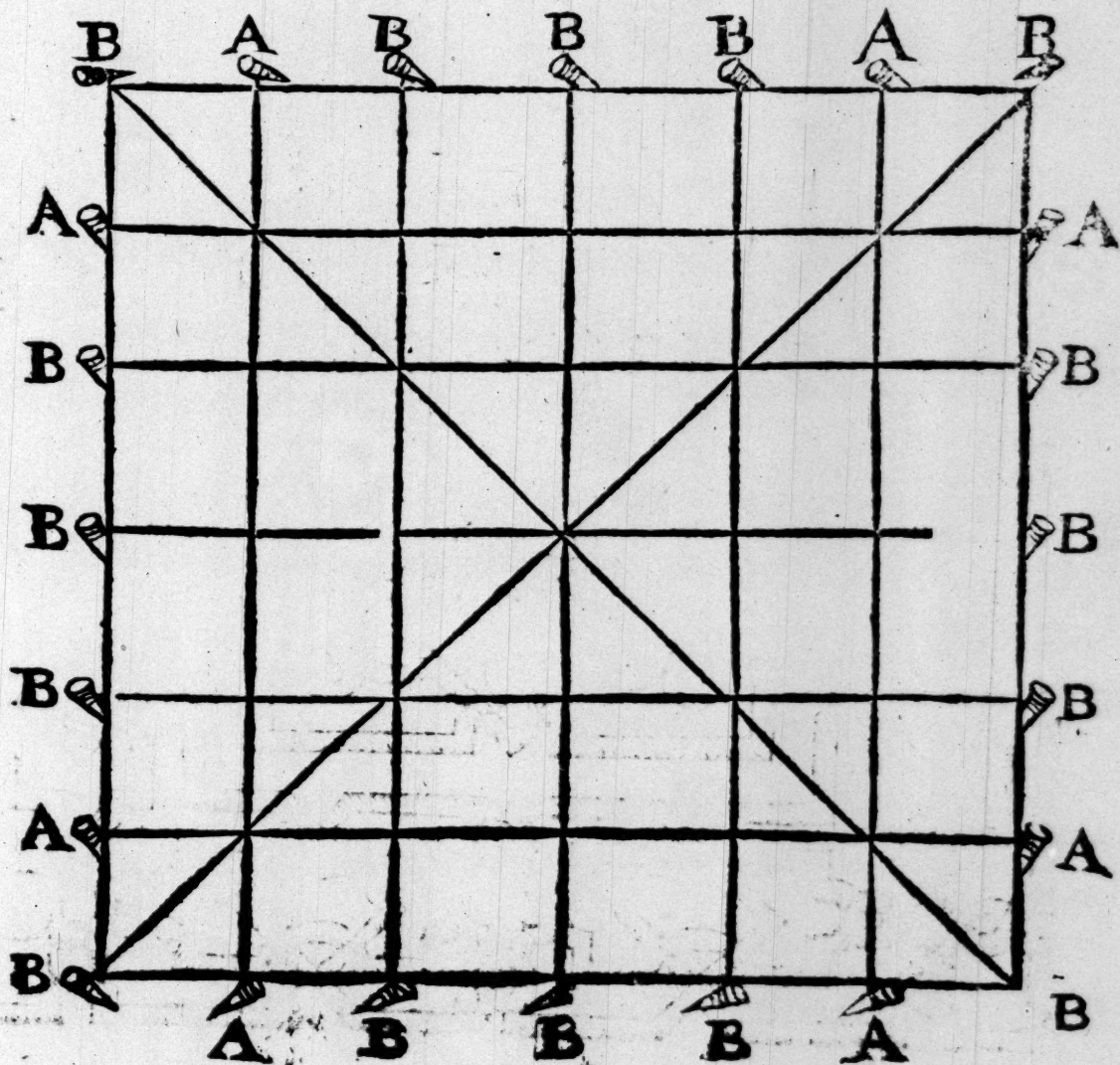
Another.



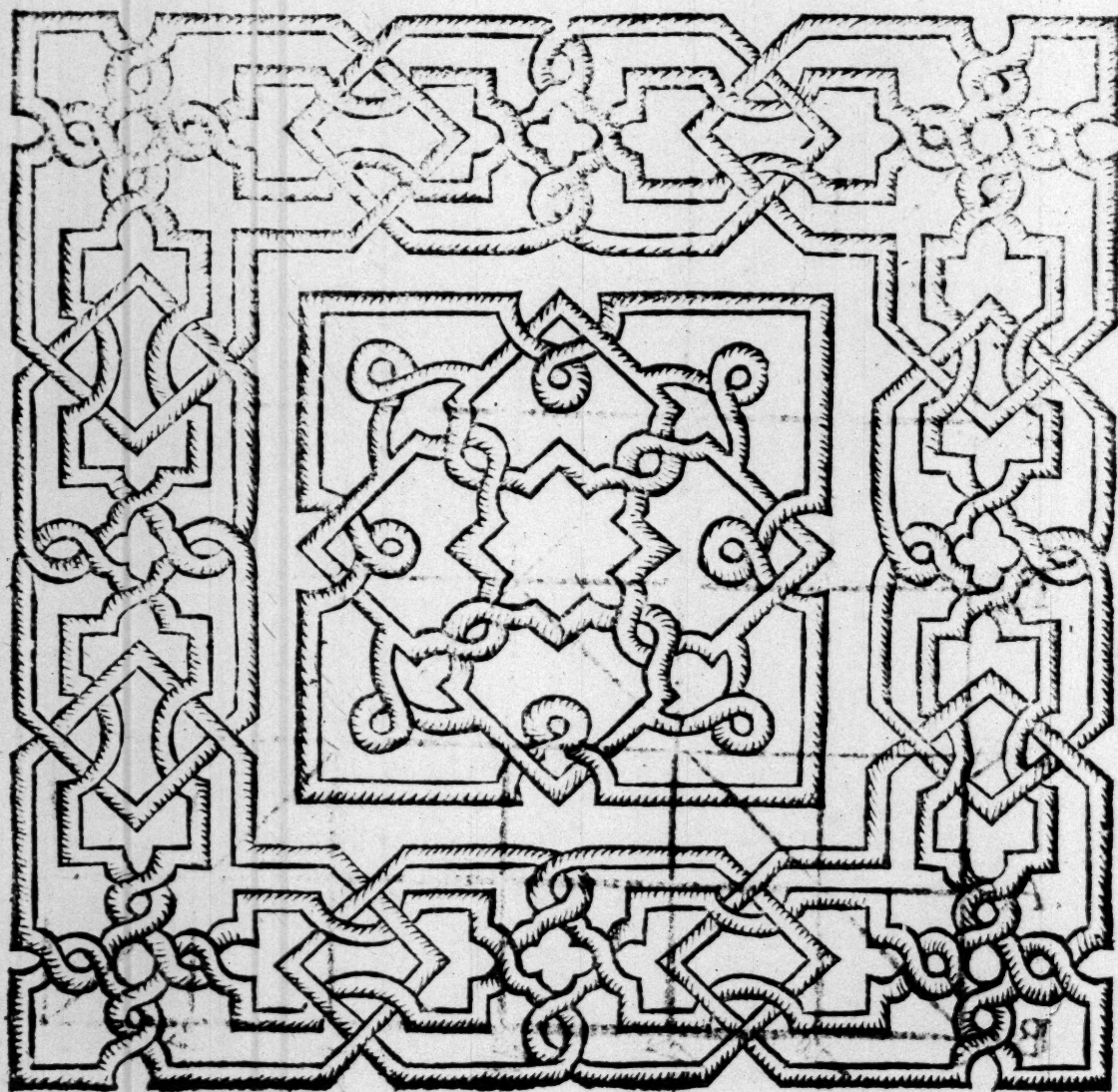
Another.



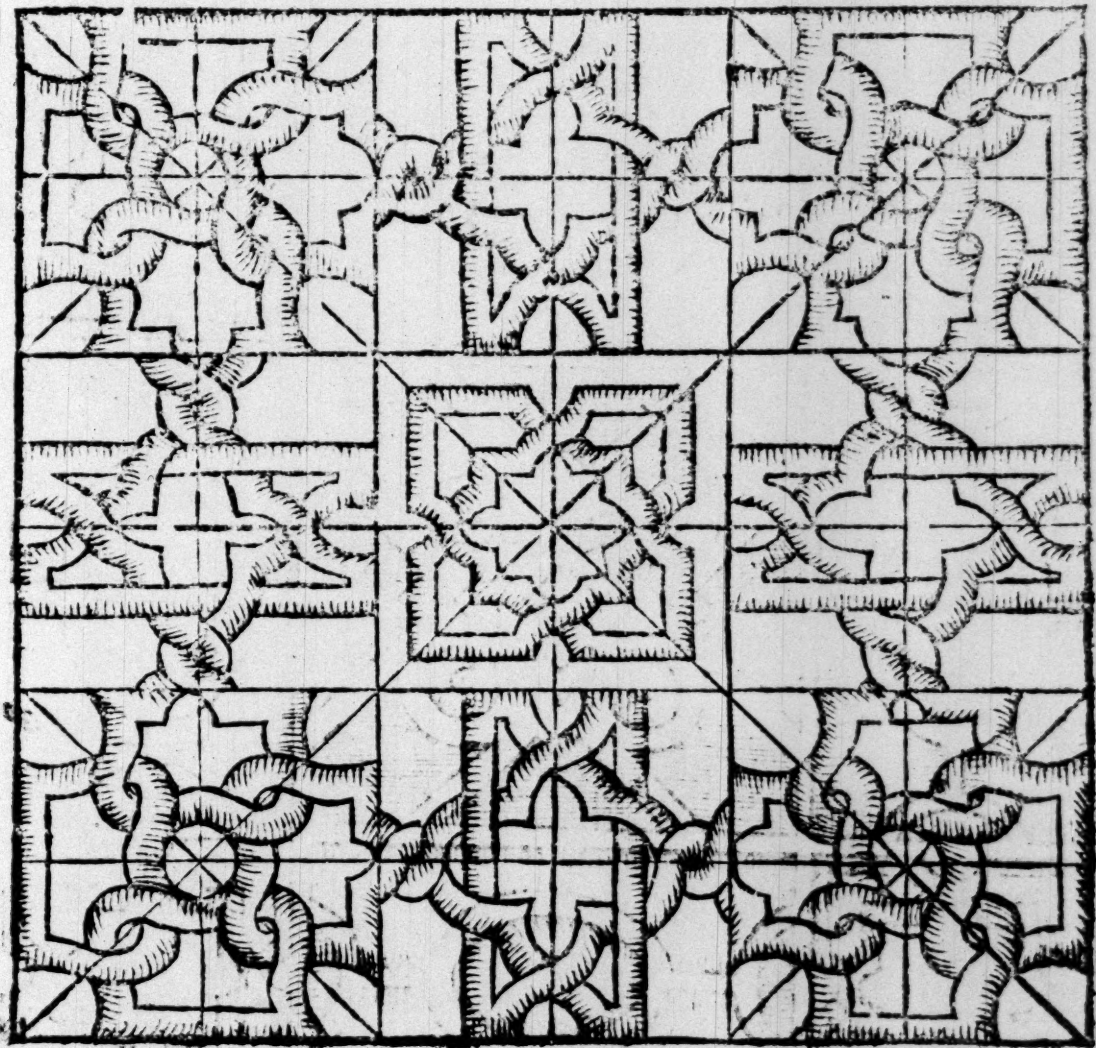
A Direction to fasten Cords or Lines to draw a
Knot with a Border; as also to make a Border of
Beds parted in the middle.



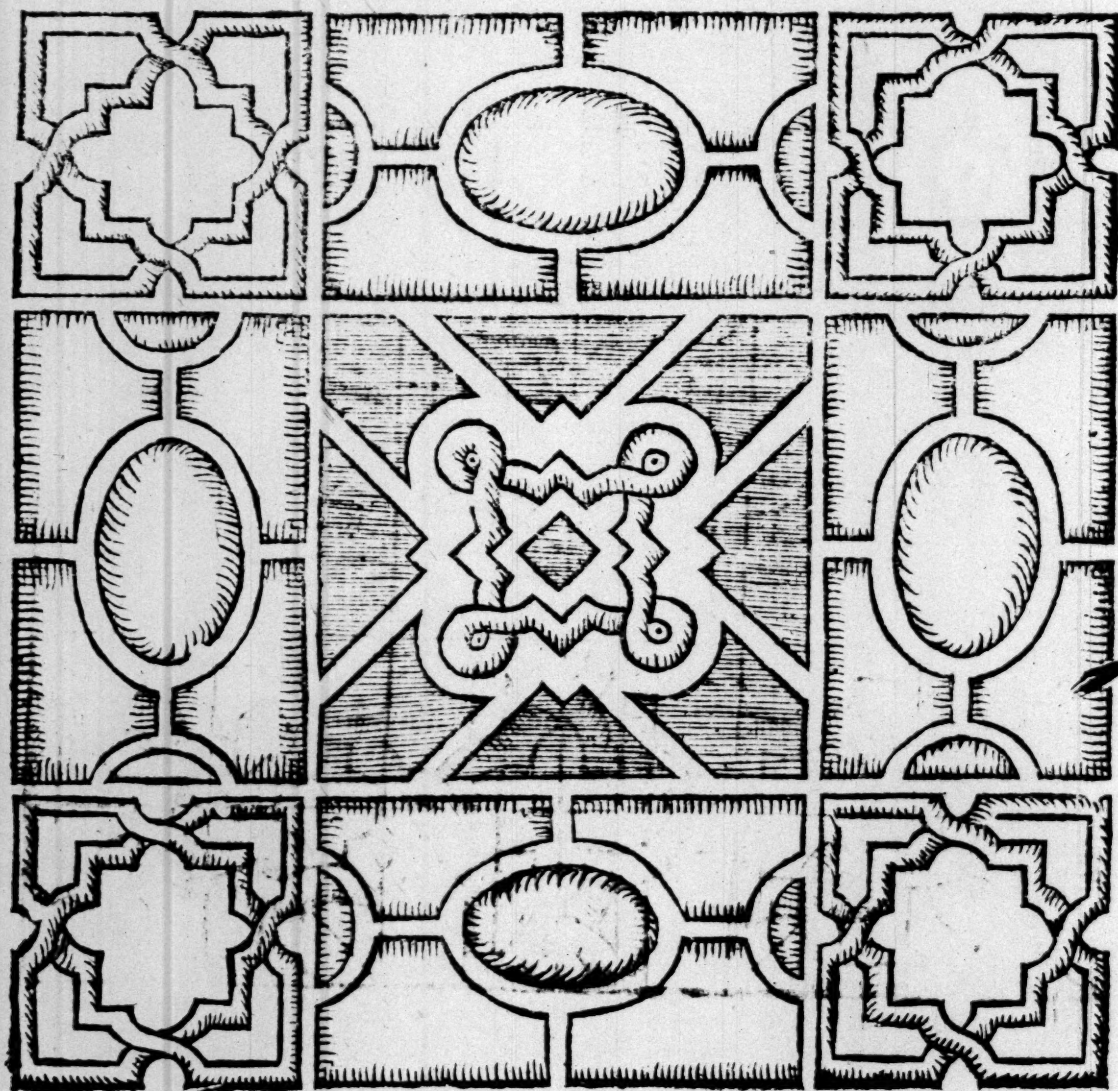
A Direction of the Cords fastned upon the
Border, with a Knot in the midst



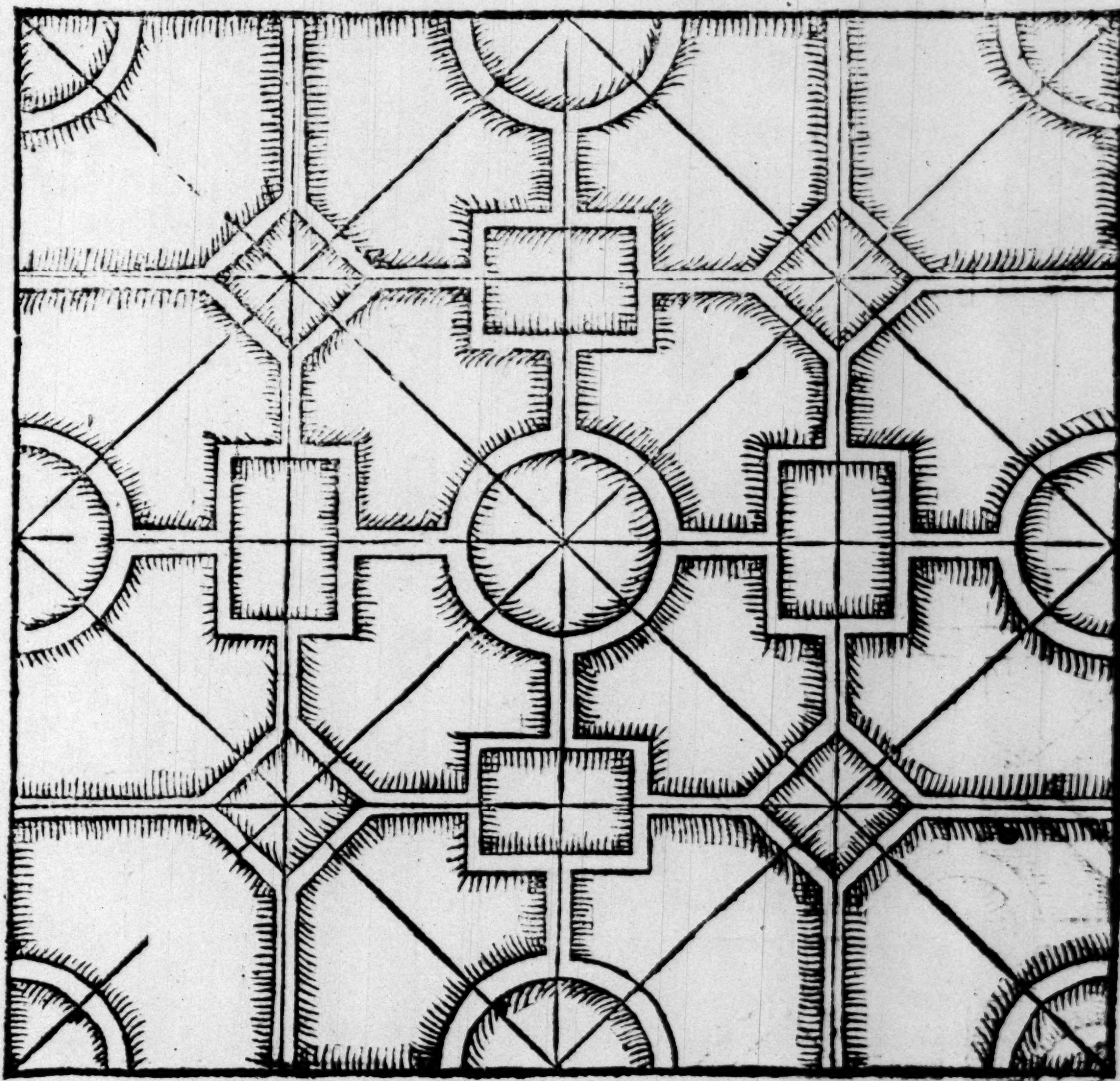
A Border with a Knot in the midst thereof.



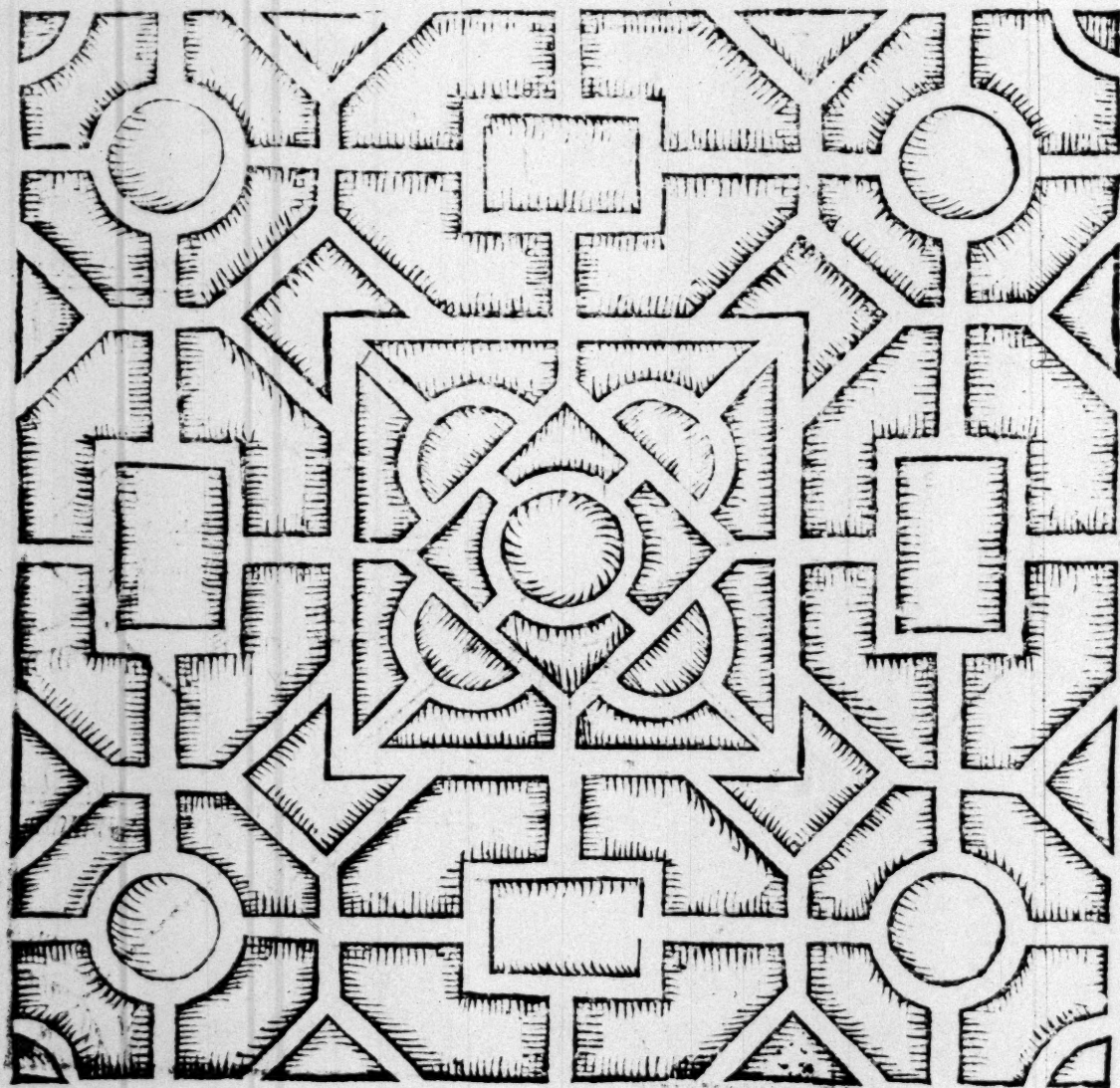
A Border or Knot divided or parted, containing five small Knots.



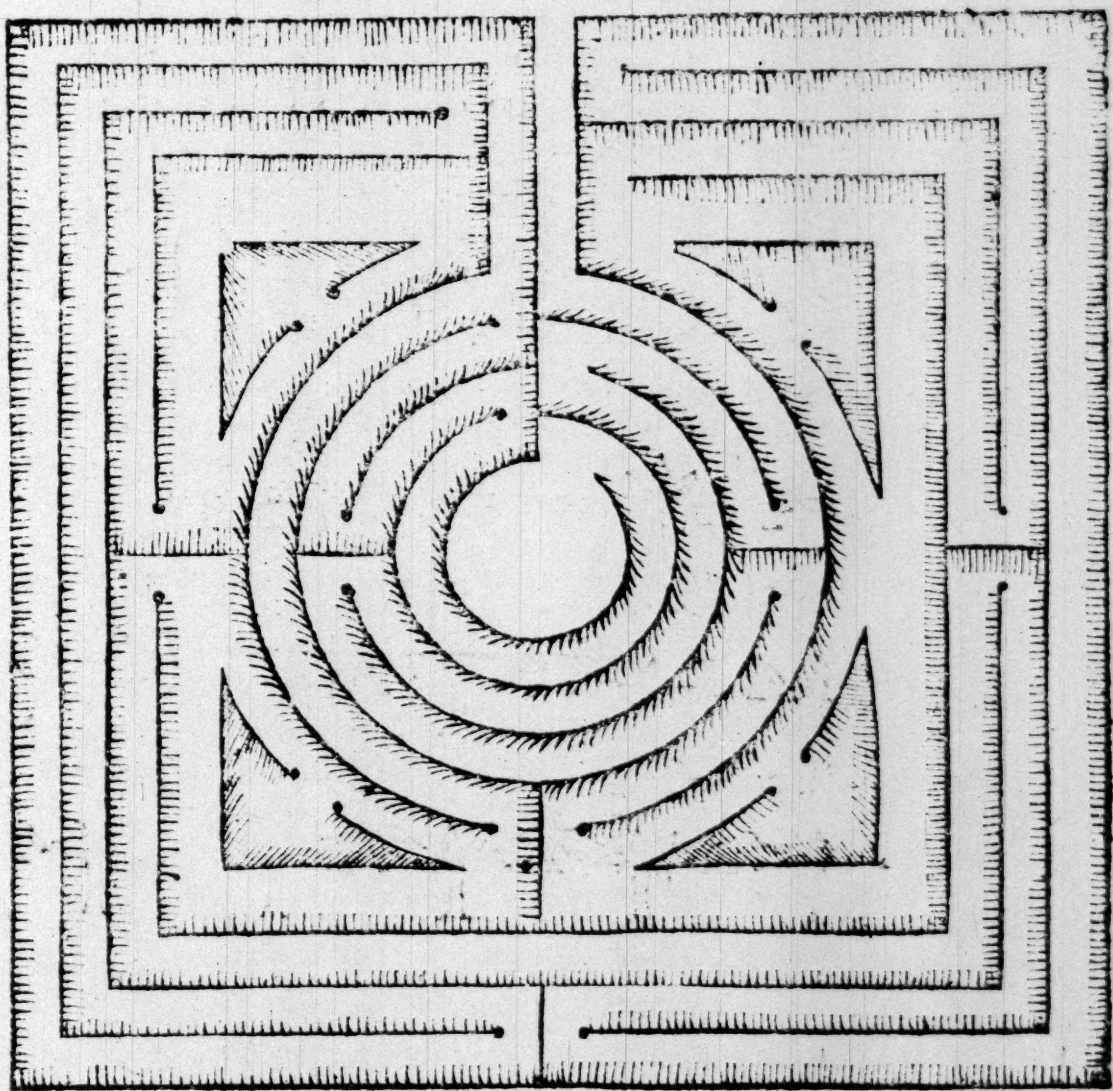
The forme of the Lines set upon the Knot,
whose squares or beds are parted.

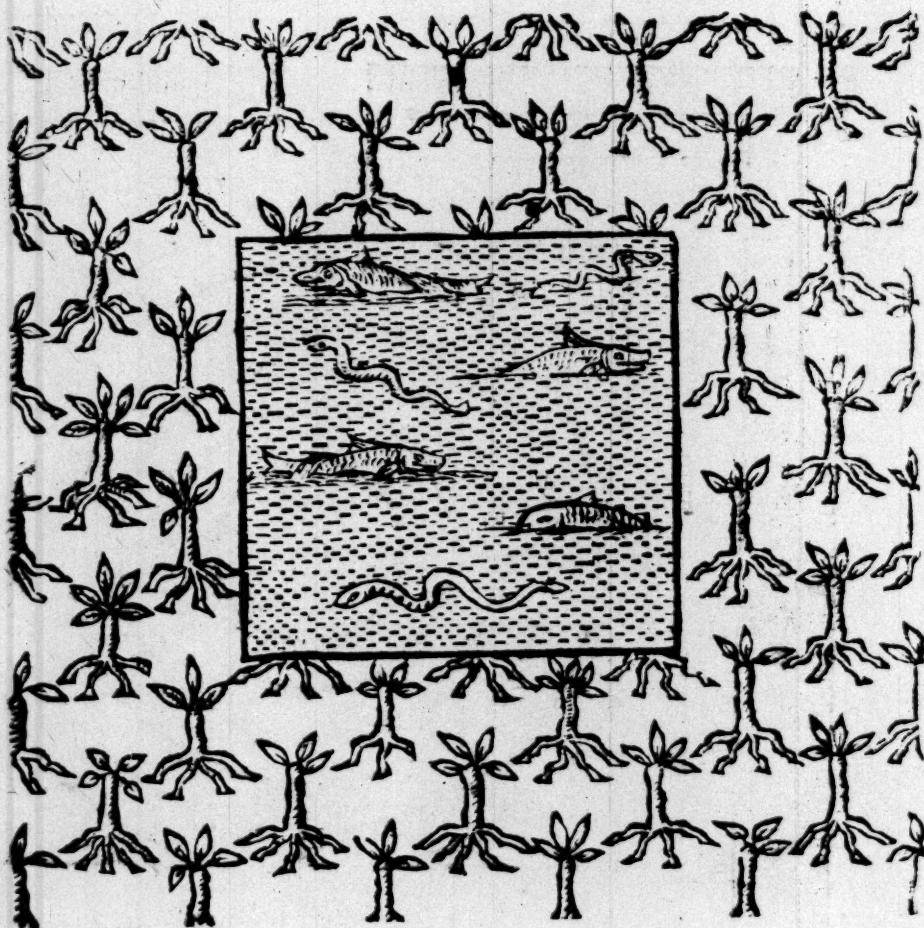


A Border of Beds or Squares parted ;
and the midst thereof



A Maze.







DEVOREUX.

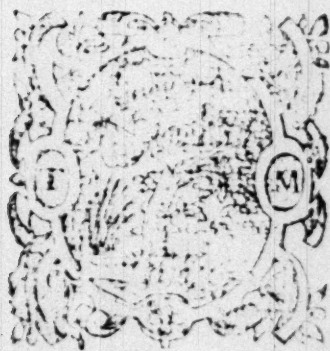
Vertues teares for the

losse of the most christian King /
third of that name, King of France, and the
vntimely death, of the most noble & heroicall
Gentleman, *Walter de Breuille*, who was
slaine before *Rouen* in France.

First written in French, by the most excellent and
learned Gentlewoman, *M^{rs} Jeanne Goussier*,
Primaire de la Reine.


And paraphratically translated into English.

*From a Manuscript in the Library of the
Royal Society.*



AT LONDON,

Printed by I. Roberts, for Thomas Millington,
and are to be sold at his thop in Corn-hill, vnder
Saint Peters Church. 1597.


To the Right Honourable, and most
vertuous Ladies and Sisters, *Dorothie*, Countesse
of Northumberland, and the Ladie
Penelope Rich.



THE vertue of your perfec-
tions (most excellent Ma-
dams) which draweth not
alone our Clime, but euen
all the Nations of Europe to
wonder; hath now diuine-
lie brought forth one issue
of theyr admiration; (I meane this Monument of
your euer-worthy to be liuing Brother,) the Mo-
ther of it (a most rare French spirit,) first created
and brought it forth in England, (thē a quiet fau-
ster-mother to her thoughts) after tooke it ouer
with her, to acquaint with her owne Nation; and
since, sent it to me to apparrell in our English fa-
shions, desirous (for his sake whom it most ado-
reth) that it might principally do your Ladiships
seruice. It was when I receiued it, exceeding rich

THE EPISTLE.

in French imbroderie, and if nowe, either by my want or dulnes, it seeme patch'd, or too homely: with the beames of your gracious eyes, (most rare creatures) shine vpon it, and then the woist of my pennis earthines doubtlesse shall be stelliied. Our Realme boasts not naturally of filkes, which are gaudie and soone vanishe, but of her playne broad-cloth, which is comlie and durable; if such like be my *Paraphras* vpon this French ground, I am all I would be, sith I desire nothing more then to giue his liuing name Poets eternitie. To you is due this tribute, and to you most humbly I tender it, vowing to liue best pleased, when I am eyther able, or can doe your Honours seruice: beeing (though a worme) as great an adorer of your vertues, as the mightiest whosoener.

Ieruis Markham.

In praise of the worke.

F *Ame* howering in her three-fold Region,
Beheld how *Aretes* did complaine
In tragick tunes, th'vntimely rape of one,
VVhom froward *Fate*, and forward *Zeale* had slaine.
But when she heard the noble *Deuoreux* nam'd,
Vnto his graue she made a speedy flight,
VVhere base *Obluion* sat, who now asham'd
Hides her foule head in shades of endlesse *Night*.
Then not content her valarous *Palladine*
Should be interred in so small a roome;
That after time may think his Stemme deuine,
She makes the spacious world his glorious Toomb,
And bad this Lady doe the obsequies,
VVho offereth holy teares for sacrifice.

R. Allott.

To my most affectionate friend, Ieruis Markham.

T O worthy *Deuoreux*, Armes, and after Age,
A wondrous Colosse doth thy Muse enhance,
His boistrous feete are fixed on the stage
Of peacefull Albions strand, and fruitfull Fraunce,
Vnder whose forked Arch whole Names ride
Filling their empie sailes with *Deuoreux* Fame,
That Fraunce, Spayne, Flaunders, and the world beside
Amazed stands to heare great Essex Name.
From out his eyes he darts the golden beames
Of perfit Honors neuer-setting Sunne,
Whose influence in each soule fresh courage streames
All this, nay more, thy sacred teares haue donne,
Wing'd by thy fierie Muse thy mount the skyes,
And moue to weeping rish heauens twinkling eyes.

R. Allott.

In prayse of the worke.

ONce borne of mortall Parents, mortally
 Earth turnes to earth in noble *Deuoreux* :
 A second life immortall wits infuse,
 And crowne him now with immortalitie :
 His Mother *French*, for he in *Fraunce* did die,
 And *Phoenix* of his ashes there renues ;
 His Father is a gentle English Muse,
 From whence he challengeth nobilitie :
English and *French* thus enter-married,
 Haue issue double *Fame* : his *fame*, theyr *owne* :
 As gold of that *Great-worke*, that powrefull *Stone*,
 So *Fame* of *Virtue*, and it selfe are bred ;
 His first birth night to this, this a true morne ;
 May his noble Brother be as well wise-borne.

E. Guilpin.

To his deere friend Ieruis Markham.

NO longer let dismembred *Italie*
 Thinke scorne of our (thought dull for colder) clime,
 V'ee are not so frost-bitten in the prime,
 But blest from heau'n with as great wealth as shee :
 V'ith all her Citties shall one, our Cittie
 Compare for all the wealth of this rich time ;
 Thames shall with Po vie Swanns, Swanns musicke
 London with subtle Venice, pollicie ; (chime,
 Shee shall drop beauties with faire Genoa,
 Though humorous trauailers repine thereat :
 But not with glorious Florence will they say,
 So farrefam'd for her wits triumvirat ;
 To that proude brag thou Ieruis shalt replie,
 V'whose Muse in this song gives them all the Lye.

E. Guilpin.



ARETEÆ Lachrimæ.

1.



Oe-wearied with the euer-weeping woe
That breaks the aged raines of withered Fraunce,
And thinking how those thoughts to ouer-goe
That giue eternall memory to mischaunce,
Or willing to deceiue th'vnwilling foe,
Of euer-springing teares, by some dead traunce,
Earlie before the early Sunne could rise,
I rose from rest, when rest rose from mine eyes :

2

And freed from that which frees it selfe from care,
(For quiet nere was consort with complaynt)
Led by Hopes hand, though drawne on by Dispaire,
(The Factor for improuident constraint)
I walkt alongst a streame, for purenes rare,
Brighter then sun-shine, for it did acquaint
The dullest sight with all the glorious pray
That in the pibble-paued channell lay.

B.

No

DEVORAX.

3

No moulten Christall, but a richer Mine,
Euen Natures rarest Alcumie ranne there,
Diamonds resolut, or substance more diuine,
Through whose bright-gliding current might appeare
A thousand naked Nymphes, whose Iuory shine
Enamoling the banks, made them more deare
Then euer was that glorious Pallace gate
VVhere the day-shyning Sunne in tryumph sate.

4

Vpon the brym, the Eglantine and Rose,
The Tamoriske, Oliue, and th' Almond-tree,
As kinde companions in one vnion groes,
Foulding theyr twinding armes, as oft we see
Turtle-taught Louers eyther other close,
Lending to dulnes feeling sympathie.
And as a costly Vallance ore a bed,
So did their garland-tops the Brooke ore-sprede.

5

Their leaues, that differd both in shape and show,
(Though all were greene, yet difference such in greene)
Like to the checkerd bent of *Iris* bow,
Prided the running Mine, as it had beene
The bower of Beautie; whence alone did flow
More heauenly streames then former age had scene,
Taking their current from that learned Hill
VVhere lodge the Mothers of admire and skill.

Amongst

DEVORAX.

2

6

Amongst the Sommer blossoms of theyr bowes
A thousand severall colour'd Birds was set,
VVhomou'd (as seem'd) by charitable vowes,
Or excellent compassion, euer wet
VVith honourable teares, (for Fates allowes
That senceible, from sencelesse, still shall set
Models of pittie,) came there with melodie,
To cheere mens minds, fore-done with miserie.

7

And with the murmring cadence of the waue
That made a pretty wrangling as it went,
Chiding the banks which no more lymit gaue,
They ioynd their well-tun'd throats with such consent,
That euen mad griefe at sight thereof grew graue;
And as inchaunted, stayd from languishment,
Prouing, then there, delight was neuer greater,
And griefe how much the more, so much the better.

8

Thether came I to seeke out lost Delight,
(Delight that was in *Eden* banisht man)
But presently appeard vnto my sight
A soule-sad Nymph, griefe-tortur'd, pale and wan;
Vpon whose countenaunce rigorous Despight
Registred much, or more then Mischiefe can:
All that shee was, was pittifull and ill,
Such as to lymne, my weake wit wanteth skill.

B 2

VVith

DEVORAX.

9

VVith balefull Cypresse was her for-head crownd,
And fatall Yewgh made bracelets for her hands;
A shole of night-Crowes with a deadly sound,
And dismall Shrike-owles round about her stands:
Her eyes within a wofull Ocean drownd,
Oyle-like increast newe fire on dollours brands,
And with a dym blew burning Lampe she bare,
Shee offred sacrifice vnto Dispaire.

10

Those curious rich abylliments which once
Pleasd all the world, because they pleasd her well,
Now torne and staynd, disparadg'd for the nonce,
Like Autumne leaues too negligently fell:
And falling, in disorder all a-tonce,
VVith lesse respect then least regard can tell,
Carelesly trail'd after her as shee went,
To proue shee lou'd no vesture but lament.

11

And yet for all thys Chronicle of shame,
Thys ample Legend of mis-fortunes worst,
This boundlesse volume of desertlesse blame,
Thys figure of despight, thys Map accurst;
VVell might I know her now ill ruind frame
Had euen some-times the rarest features nurst,
And beauties abstracts still were left so claire,
That wilfull blind must say, once she was faire.

Once

DEVORAX.

3.

12

Once was shee fayre, and that her mangled gowne
VVhich halfe forooke to shroude her sacred skin,
VVas of a stufte immortall, as *Ioues* crowne,
Rich-seeming Azure-Veluet, wrought within,
VVithout, and every part; all wauing downe
VVith golden Flower-deluces, that had bin
Charmes from dishonour, and despight mischaunce
Brought ten times thousand Tropheys into Fraunce.

13

All thys I knew, yet knew not what mishap,
VVhat life-confounding grieve, wasting good thought,
Her heauie soule in agonie should wrap:
Nor could the meane by any meane be sought
VVhy her eternall sighes (clowd-like) did lap
Her ioyes in mourning garments, sadly wrought,
Nor why shee tore her flame downe-burning haire;
Yet still shee sigh'd, and still her locks did taire.

14

Tyll with a knee-bow'd humble low salute,
(For who will not doe reuerence to admire)
Approching neere her, I made humble lute
Her god-head would giue grace to my desire,
And tell mee what woe murdered her repute,
Making her sighes to set her teares on fire;
And shee whose grieve could not surprize her glory,
Set her sad tongue in tune to tell the story.

B ;

O

DEVORAX.

15

* O you immortall Daughters of delight,
Admir'd alone, triple triplicitie,
Fayre *Thespian* Goddesses, whose onely might,
VVith holy fire inspires our memorie;
Euen you deare Muses, ayde me to recite
Her dolefull accents, and her agonie:
Bathe my cold temples in some blessed spring,
That dare not else dreame of so great a thing.

16

The Countesse of Northumberland & the Lady Rich.

But you ! ô you, you that alone are you,
VVhom nothing but your selues your selues can match,
From whom, and to whom, all the Vertues flew:
For ere high *Ioue* the worlds worke did dispatch,
Your curious moulds within himselfe he drew,
Making his Dietie thereon to watch,
Vowing, Beautie and Vertue, till your birth
Should not be seene, or knowne vpon the earth.

17

You, Sisters both in nature and admire,
The golden typ of euery praying tonge,
That make one Ile boue all the world aspire.
(O thinke not Fraunce this furie doth thee wrong,
For who that *speakes*, *speakes* not with double fire
If but one thought of them glaunce in his song?
Then pardon mine inuoke, and let me ring
Iustly on them that *teach* all Swannes to sing.)

Heare

DEVORAX.

4

18

Heare mee, ô holy ones, and helpe my stile,
Glorious adopted fayre *Northumberland*,
And thou rich *Rich*, richest did ere compile,
Th'onely history shall eternall stand
VVhen ruine els shall all records defile,
And burne out mem'ry with Obluions brand;
Ayde you those Muses that should ayde my pen,
For you'r ador'd of Muses, Gods, and men.

19

Euen for his soules sake whom your soules lou'd deare,
Fayre Ladies lighten fauour on my lay,
And him behold, though mee you will not heare,
Him, whose omnipotence of fame beares sway
Farther then from the high Alpes highest staire
The worlds great eye hath power to see by day:
You that liue aye in him, hee in your thought,
Exhalt my Muse, vntuterd, not vntaught.

20

Be you, you glorious Angels of his prayse,
(VVhose but report lends earth a heau'nly soule)
The fitt beholders of my tragick layes,
VVhom if you bleſſe, there's none dares to controule,
(For curst is hee that what you say, gaine-sayes)
Or chyd mee for your Brother I enroule
About the host of former liuing men;
A noble worke, fit for a golden pen.

Bow

DEVORAX.

21

Bow then your eares (the Adamants of loue)
Vnto the song that wounded Honour fange,
And let her teare-sleept words some pittie moue,
For thus shee sigh'd, and thus her tale began.

* Know (saide this Nymph, thats reuerent all aboute)
I am the same on whom some-times did hange
The rule of Fraunce, her sway, her Emperie,
Her type of state, her Kingdoms dignitie.

22

Twas I that bent their backs with loaden wealth,
That gaue them lawes to gouerne gloriously,
Twas I that made them breathe eternall health,
And gaue them names, Nations to terrestre:
I brought them vnder by desert, not stealth,
And lodg'd them in the bookes of memory;
In briebe, twas I, that with theyr neighbours store
Made them more rich then ere was Realme before.

23

But see alas, a left-hand chance of ill
Madding theyr braines made lunaticke with pride,
Hath turn'd thys Turret downe, valleyd this Hill,
All topsie-turue throwne on euery side:
Thus haue they torne my vesture, broake my will,
Doom'd mee in endlesse banishment to bide,
All things are out of order, woe alas,
I am not *ARETEA*, as I was.

Now

DEVORAX.

5.

24

Now doth the father hate his lyuing sonne,
The neighbour loathes his neighbour bounds him in,
The married paire would haue their knot vndone,
Lawes serue for naught, but baits to draw on sinne,
After religion painted zeale doth runne
Mocking his moanes, that ending, new begin;
And like the ruind batteries of a wall,
Things shapt, vnto their vnshapt *Chaos* fall.

25

Adder-deafe eares they haue when wisedome charmes,
VVilfull in ill, ilnesse beyond conceite,
Foolish to shun, wise to draw on their harmes,
Rich to deceiue themselves by selfe deceite:
All they desire is ciuill home alarmes,
Burning the houses of their owne receite;
VVracking the vessels that transport their good,
VVithin the Ocean of their owne harts blood.

26

Eight times haue I giuen end to their vnrest,
And seald vp discords gates with wealthy peace,
Their streetes and Temples all with Oliues drest,
As oft hath testifi'd their warres surcease:
But woe, I dye that this should be exprest.
Mars giuing blood-drunk *Ate* new release,
Hath at this present set fresh brands on fier
To kindle those old warres Time did expire.

C.

For

DEVORAX.

27

For as a mighty Deludge after raine
Gliding with furie from the hills descent,
Finding all bounds too strait for his remaine,
VVith roaring clamors (as the earth did rent)
Bursts through the Meads, & over-flows the plaine,
Chiding the rocks in which his waues were pent :
Then drownes the Plough-mans profit in his fall,
His house, his hay, his labours, hope and all.

28

Briefly, so like a Tyrant doth it rage,
Madder, since vnrelisted being mad,
VVhen an incountring bridge seekes to aswage
The thunder-deafning current proudly glad:
As these sterne men (borne in this yron age)
Haue done, who making all my pleasures sad,
Are nor content to teare their Countries bones,
And spoyle her life and soule, with bed-rid grones :

29

But being Paracids, abortiue borne,
In whom old Nature chalengeth no right,
Bring in their murderous hands (to Fraunce forlorne)
The minatours of shame, engins of spight :
As pride, in chastitie, horror, blood, and scorne,
Monsters of hell-black sunnes vnto the night ;
Thinking to stop that royall Champions breath,
VVhose life preferu'd Diuinitie from death.

Euen

30

Euen him whom I had planted strong and hie,
 (High in the world, strong in the harts of Kings)
 To be a scourge vnto their tyrannie:
 Bating the furie of their enuious wings,
 By meanes of that almighty *Henry*;
Henry de Valois, on whom vertue rings:
 Vnder whose gracious aspect, I did hope,
 My lawes should take new vertue, larger scope.

31

And the all white, pure Virgin-colour'd faith,
 Of soules eternall quiet, lodg'd in skies,
 That turnes the dying pangs to ioyes in death,
 Should to the height of heights aspire and rise:
 Hence sprang it, and for this my true hart faith,
 I ioynd to him, the man most stout, most wise
 Th'other all great *Henry*: whose in-sight,
 Might guide, support, and gouerne him in right.

32

But ô, these monstrous men, Monsters, not men:
 VVhom the earth-shaking heauens in thunder fram'd,
 To make my ruine boundlesse; they, euen then
 Haued ray'd their blood-bath'd hands, yet vnasham'd,
 Against the Lords anoynted: (VVeepe my pen)
 For they haue slaine their King, (brute beasts vntam'd)
 Their sacred King, their worlds God, whose true care,
 Made their great names flourish on earth so fare.

C 2

But

DEVORAX.

33

But he, too excellent to know what's ill,
 (The gooddest holy one that breath'd this ayre)
 Troubling no thoughts to think what others will,
 Neglected what they meant, what harts they beare,
 Neither ambition, palme-like growing still,
 Nor lookes, nor policies, nor nightly teare,
 Made him beware, which each day growing on,
 Double each day afflicted me with moane.

34

* At th'end of this sad memorable storie,
 Crossing her armes as one in desperate case,
 There broke from her two eyes, (the starres of glorie)
 Two bloody fireames of teares, that ranne a pace,
 VWhich her immortall sighs (woes oratorie)
 Straue both to interrupt and to disgrace,
 So mightily, that pittie did not stint
 To place him selfe in harts of yron and flint.

35

Heere, heere, sayd she (as soone as say she could,
 Or that her woes gaue words leaue how to speake)
 Heere mayst thou see my sorrowes flood vnfold,
 The deludge of my care, hence, hence doth breake,
 The tumult of my sighs, the heate, the cold,
 Of my flame-burning thoughts, benum'd and weake:
 This is the cause of my first borne lament,
 And the true greefe which doth my soule torment.

And

DEVORAX.

7.

36

And yet tis but the first step to my care,
Or but the superficies of my paine;
A preface to my moane, an Index to dispaire,
A little thred, lending a mighty meane
To search the Laborinth where languors are,
A rising cloude against a storme of raine:
For mount on mount was thrown, masse vpon masse,
Till greatest greefe grew greater then it was.

37

This woe, that spred it selfe from East to VVest,
Bounding the Artick and Antartick pole,
Ambitiously enuied he was supprest
VVithin the circute of the worlds controule;
VVherefore as if all tremor, all vnrest,
VVere insufficient richly to condole
My starre-croft misadventures in disdaine,
Adds a new greefe, to make new worlds complaine.

38

Euen now affliction heaues her heauie arme,
And spreads black sorrowes Ensigne through our land;
Calamitie braues all the world with harme,
And burnes vp peace with warres worst fier-brand:
Tempests, no calmes, mens eares doe rudely charme,
And all preposstrous things in tumult stand:
All fortunes draw vs to infortunes gares,
(Fortune, the first and last that ruins states.)

C 3

O

DEVORAX.

39

O Fortune, thou great Amorite of Kings,
Opinions breath, thou Epicurian ayre,
Inuention of mans soule, falsest of things,
A step beyond our iudgement, and a stayre
Higher then men can reach with reasons wings;
Thou blind-fold Archeresse, thou that wilt not heare,
Thou foe to persons, manners, times and all,
That raysest worthlesse, whilst the worthiest fall.

40

O thou, whom all may find, but none auoyde,
Deceitfull Queene of mutabilitie,
Swift are thy feathered feete, still vnanoyde,
Loftie thy minde, thy hopes to heauen flie,
Thy wings are light, like flames neuer destroyd,
Vpon a Globe thou stand'st, turning our miserie:
Of thee must I complaine, dread Nurse of woe,
From whom, both heauen and earthly things doe floe.

41

Thou thrall to none but to Philosophie,
That Monarchies and states turn'it at thy will,
Leauing no more marks of their dignitie,
Then ships in water leaue, or feathered quill
Leaues in the liquid ayre, when speedilie
It glides through it, scaling the starry hill:
Monster-bearing Mother, why didst thou long,
Hauing done thy worst, yet to doe greater wrong?

But

DEVORAX.

8.

42

But why of this great nothing doe I plaine,
Stoning to death these shadowes with my teares?
And rather doe not with their drops constrain
The substance to lament for my dispaire?
VVhy doth not this salt Ocean of my braine
Conuay my mournings to more better eares?
Beating the marble-skye for this offence,
Chiding no more Fortune, but Prouidence.

43

O Prouidence, the conduct to our life,
The ground of vertue, hostile foe to sinne,
That rearest Towers, and appeasest strife,
That gatherst all disperced exiles in:
Thou, that inuentedst lawes, gaue man his wife,
Thou Mistris vnto auncient discipline,
Thou, that bearest heauen & nature round about thee,
That makest all things, nothing being without thee.

44

O why art thou growne blind? leading astray?
Confounding vertue? making vice thy friend?
Sacking the sun-shine Towers of the day?
Prefixing wandring miserie no end?
VVhy hast thou giuen Barbarisme sway,
And wilt not let Order on thee attend?
VVhy art thou fled from vs? whither art thou gone?
Leauing both men, and all things else alone.

Tell

DEVORAX.

45

Tell me, thou Architectresse of this frame,
Thou, that vpon the great booke-firmament
VVritest in golden starres each creatures name,
Their liues, their fortunes, and intendiment,
VVhy dain'st thou not that we may reade the same,
And spelder our misdeeds why we be shent?
If to behold the letters be thy will,
Teach vs to reade, that we may rid our ill.

46

Lend vs diuine eyes to our heavenly part,
To reade on that almighty Chronicle:
So shall the date of vertue neuer part,
But double wonder with more miracle,
(Ay me) against the wind breathes my poore hart:
Vaine is my wish, vaine euery article,
Of mine inrag'd desire, my wrath boots not,
Men must be men, and must not know their lot.

47

Then on thou saddest Muse of my sad thought,
Or what besides more sad then sadnes is,
Thereto You Goddesses for earths sole wonder wrought,
There Ladies of my plaint, creators of all blisse,
In whose aspects vertue is chastly taught:
You hearers of mine inuocations with,
Hallow my song with Diamonds from your eyes,
Since woe is god-like, falling from such skyes,

And

DEVORAX.

Gustavus Adolphus
9 *Ad*

48

And thou that hast grownd-sharpe mine ore-worne
Adding new fire to cinders of my griefe, (moane,
Make thine eares plyant to receiue my groane,
(Thine eares, the Confessorie of beliefe,)
Exhale thine hart (perfect afflictions throne)
Cancell th'accounts of pleasure: and in brieft,
Make every office of receite in thee,
A store-house of this greatest miserie.

49

After the sonnes of mischief and misdeed
(These tyrannous blood-drinking miscreants)
Had slaine their King; An act which did exceed
The worst that Time noteth in recreants:
VVhen they had banisht Vertue, torne her weed,
And sworne themselues, Shames deuoted tenants,
Fell deadly loue-sicke with Ambitions face,
VVhole Feuer, naught could cure but my disgrace.

50

* *Ambition*, lie vpon thy painted cheeke,
(VVoe worth the beauty sleepes not with the face)
For thou art hatefull, foule, vnfaire, vnmecke,
A poyson-painted pleasure mad men chase:
Thou reasonlesse desire, that mak'st men seeke
To kisse the Sonne, whilst fire doth them embrace,
Thou onely strong, disorderd, rulelesse passion,
That marr'st mens mindes, & putt'st the out of fashion.

D.

Thou

DEVORAX.

5 1

Thou angry house-mate, thou seditious guest
That begg'st, and yet loath'st Hospitalitie,
Thou murd'rer of the minde that giues thee rest,
Rewarding kindnes with indignitie;
Thou element to mischiefes shape digest,
False Prophet, teaching naught but heresie:
Thou robb'st the rich of gold, almes from the poore,
And gyu'st them backe but hope to mend their store.

5 2

Thou, that in Rome within a hundred yeeres
Rayd and ore-threw seauenty-three Emperours:
Mother of ciuill discord, home-bred teares,
Thou infinite great ill no end deuoures,
Prides Minion, and the ladder to dispaire,
A day eternall, ended by no houres:
Twas thou that taught'st them all the waies to sin,
And ending, how new mischiefes should begin.

5 3

By thys Lieutenent-generall of hell
Conducted to assault all holy things,
They racst my buildings, burnt my virgin-Cell,
Defacst my Temples, spoyld mine offerings;
Brake all my statues Faine had caru'd so well,
And quencht my burning Lamps in bloody springs:
All the bright Censors round about my shrine,
Are damp't, and smoard vp with forgetfull Time.

Thys

54

Thys inauspicious starre, this fatall ill,
 Thys messenger of Maiesties low fall,
 Having subiected all things to his will,
 And bound mee euerlastingly to thrall;
 Great grife, which growes by vse to greatest skill,
 Raisd royall passions to a ciuill brall,
 And by strong arguments, approu'd this trew,
 That leaden thoughts, then earth nere higher flew.

55

Thence came it, that mine all-forfaken Fame,
 Full of sicke-feathers, weake, and desperate,
 Impt her broake plumes, and like a iealous flame,
 VVith enuius hast mounting the highest gate,
 And strriuing to out-goe in swift-pac'd game
 Clowd fashond Smoake, (the Vsher to his state)
 I heau'd my head about a sea of teares,
 And through the world sought ayde for my dispaire.

56

VVas nere a corner (if there corners be
 As some imagine) in this gloabie round,
 VVhither Fame bore not mine indignitie,
 Comenting stories of my bleeding wound.
 Faire *Sien*, whose face saw theyr impietie,
 Bore through her channell to the Oceans bound
 My huge infortune, thence the salt-Seas course,
 To all the world my miseries discourse.

D 2

Yet

DEVORAX.

57

Yet pittifull vnпиты'd, pittying eyes
 Suruayd mee, but with common charitie:
 This customary, vsuall sacrifice,
 Silly *God-helpe*, verball integritie;
 Cameliou almes, a foode which doth suffice
 Hardly the eare: though ayre most commonly
 Is all his sustenance. O thys was that
 VVhich poorest made, made poorer mine estate.

58

At length, (though bed-rid with perpetuall grieve,
 And Mountaine-laden with my miserie)
 By Fame instructed, (thee that is the chiefe,
 And great all-teller what great'st wonders be)
 I heard of thee faire ENGLAND, where reliefe
 Is stored in a Silver Treasurie,
 That plac'd alone, rul'st others, ruling many,
 Too good by much to bee conioynd with any.

59

Of thee sang Fame a glorious golden storie,
 * Oh not that prodigall prayse-spending Fame
 VVhich like a bubble, rayseth vp his glorie,
 That shadow-like continueth in the same:
 And in the end, whilst no wet eye is sorie,
 Dyes in Times bosome, which forgets his name.
 Nor that vaine Fame which turnes more quick the eyes,
 Soone witherd fruite, bright flame, that early dyes.

But

DEVORAX.

11

60

But that pure Fame, which is the soule of Kings,
(Much better for that better residence)
The true discoverer of all worthy things,
The honny-tast, and pleasure of our sence
That beares eternitie vpon her wings:
That borne ere Time, shall liue when Time is hence.
Thys holy Fame, ô *England*, spake of thee,
More praise then I can write, lesse then I see.

61

Fame told me thou wert *Jones* delightfull seat,
His Oliue-garden, wall'd with Iuorie,
VWhose spring, warrs canker durst not dare to eate,
An *Eden*, full of quiet dignitie:
Thy people rest when others broyle in sweat:
Shee drew thy line from immortalitie,
And bad me flie to thee for my redresse.
Hee that torments, can make all torments lesse.

62

Vnto the faire-shapt body of thys praise
Fame adds a head, more beautious, more diuine;
Shee tells mee then; *Pallas* thine Empire swayes.
(*Pallas*, sayd I) nay one of better line:
Shee that mounts others, but whom none can raise
By any tytle, figure, or in fine,
Higher then her owne height; because it is
The highest step in all the scale to blisse.

D 3

Shee

DEVORAX.

63

Shee hath no like; and therefore no compare
Is excellent enough to sorte with her:
To say shee's best, were to say others are,
And there's no other whom I may prefer
To such celest'all honor. O who dare
In any Name but hers, her Name inter?
(Then thus saith Fame) *ELIZA* from that Land
Controules the world, with an vnconquer'd hand.

64

Tis shee, that whilst Confusions smoakie clowde
(Stirr'd from the raging fires of ciuill warrs)
The heads of all her neighbour-Kings doth shrowd,
Infranchising Oppression by those iarrs,
Doth, with an hoast of heau'nly thoughts endow'd
Preserue her Countryes face from bloody scarrs:
So that no fogge of putrified wounds
Is seene within the circute of her bounds.

65

Tis shee that taught, teacheth Philosophie
To be more excellent then heere-to-fore:
It others, but shee, it doth ornelie,
Vnto all Arts shee is the sacred dore.
Shee, heales Afflictions-vlcres with her eye,
And vnto those which tortious wrongs deplore,
Shee giues propitious Balme, such as they craue,
Or such as Iustice wrong'd deserues to haue.

Fame

DEVORAX.

12

66

Fame told mee further, that by nature there,
In thee ô *England*, (ô all-peace-full Ile)
Courage growes vp, and best resolues appeare:
The auncient *Heroes*, whom old Time did file
Vpon record, to liue when he should weare,
Iustly compar'd, no sence can reconcile
Or match with them, whose actions vnoutgone,
Breathe at this day about *ELIZAS* throne.

67

An endlesse bead-roule of deceased Kings,
As many Princes, Nobles, Generalls,
Golden-spurd Knights, (the plumes of Honors wings)
Fame reckond vp, and call'd them Principalls.
But Death, the certain'st of vncertaine things,
Long since had reuel'd at theyr burialls;
So that I beat my breast with desperate paine,
Least Nature could not make the like againe.

67

But Fame, (the happy Herrauld of Desire,)
Chyd the weake humor of my vaine mistrust:
And told mee, *Englands* prayse was neuer hier.
For though her household-Armes lay long to rust,
And want of vse made many soules retyre
From what they would, to what perforce they must,
Yet Souldiours borne they haue continu'd still,
As good by nature, as the best by skill.

But

DEVORAX.

69

But those whom others harmes haue call'd abroad,
And Arm'd to guard the innocent from wrong,
They, Demy-god-like, from his vast aboard
Haue chast Oppression, and made Tyrants throng
In heapes to hell, and *Charons* boate ore-load,
All which to name, would make my storie long:
And dull thine eares, though it content thy minde,
Sith sweetest things doe soonest cloy by kinde.

70

*Sir John
Norris.*

O *Norris*, I could liue vpon thy name,
And weare more pennis then ere were made to write,
I could each howre draw stanzaes of thy fame,
And make my braines perpetually indite;
But o! thy vertues shall inspire a flame
Better then mine, much better to recite
Thy noble Gests, which gallantly shall stand,
VWhilst *Ireland* is, *Spayne*, or the *Netherland*.

71

*Sir Francis
Norris.*

Vere, I could breathe a spirite in thy praise,
(Thou Father to a most oppressed Land)
But that I know, Honor intends to raise
Miraculously from that frozen strand
A wit; which set on fire to see thy dayes,
Shall register the glories of thy Land:
And, for that all my prayes are too few
For him; to whom I, and all praise are dew.

For

72

For thee ô *Essex* and thy noble line,
 Euer most great, yet greater then it was,
 Thou sun-shine, drying widdowes teared eyne,
 The Columb which supports a royall masse;
 Thou excellent, deriu'd from most diuine,
 The work *ELIZAS* power hath brought to passe:
 To thee am I deuote, and from thy deeds,
 I draw this breath, on which my spyrit feeds.

73

Yet (Princely Lord) imagine not I dare
 To take in hand the legend of thy deeds:
 I hold the best conceite too poore and bare,
 To ayme at that, which all our ayme exceeds.
 VVho liues, shall see the rarest wits that are,
 Contend to memorize the growing seeds
 Of those ripe vertues which are graft in thee,
 More then in any like posteritie.

74

Suffice it; I, as silly Palmers vse,
 That seeke to shorten day-long laboring way,
 Mongst rude discourses, often-times infuse
 The Acts of Kings and Princes, and alay
 Labour with labour: so my trauail'd Muse
 Fordone, and rauisht with this sweet assay,
 Glaunceth vpon thy Name, thy Name doth then
 Beget thy deeds, thy deeds the maze of men.

E.

Yet

DEVORAX.

75

Yet if pure zeale could tune delicious lines,
Or calmes would rest within my troubled braine,
Then would I taske my spirit, which inclines
To sing of thee, and with those notes constrain
Enuie to burst; and as thou brighter shines,
So would I rayse my thoughts, and so far straine
My high-pitcht notes to make the world resound,
Till I growne horce, loose life, loose skill and sound.

76

But ô fayre furie; Mistris of my wit,
VWhither doost thou exhale me? flag a while,
Thou for such glorious accents art vnfit:
These sweet imaginarie hopes beguile
My quick-inchaunted soule; come sadly sit,
Enough is thee, if thou in teares compile
A wofull tale, that they which heare the same,
In ruth may say: our fortunes were too blame.

77

* Thus then it was. This Nations sacred prayse,
From eare to eare, through all the world conuayde,
Quickend my spyrits, and my mind assayes
To beg some pittie there, where Angels sayd,
Commiseration like a Monarch swayes:
Thence came it, that thus torne and ill arayd
I thither went. O I shall euer thinke,
VWhat Nectar of delight mine eyes did drinke.

The

78

The Sunne I saw, was well, the worlds faire eye,
 For by *ELIZAS* light, all Nations see,
 Her throne, like to her selfe, most gloriously
 Amaz'd beholders: round about it bee
 Troups of deere-breathing starrs, which whilst she's by,
 Shine dim, yet sweetly gracing their degree,
 But when to make light dearer, she's vnseene,
 They shine as bright as they all Sunnes had beene.

79

Round about these, as Planets in their spheares,
 Predominant to rule all other men,
 Sages, and Princes, Knights and Squires appeares,
 Euer almighty: most almightie then
 Is he, whom her life-giuing grace endearas,
 And lends a leaue to search through Dangers den
 For all the praisefull Honours: or beside,
 VVhat ought or should with Knighthoods fame abide.

80

Before her Maiestie thus fell I downe,
 Forsaken, comfortlesse, and most opprest,
 And ere I spake, I often-times did swoone,
 (Greefe hardly parts from a care-filled brest)
 My teares her foote-steps pittiously did crowne;
 And on the ground whilst I my sight inuest,
 Despight the interruptions of my bale
 I eccho'd forth a sorrow-broken tale.

E 2

More

DEVORAX.

81

More were my plaints then I haue power to tell;
For when cleare Maiestie with gracious looke
Lends a mild eare t' Afflictions pasing bell,
Conceite redoubles, and what power forsooke,
Makes it selfe powrefull; nothing thinks he well
VVhich is not oft repeated. Thence I tooke
Courage to bare my wounds, and euermore,
Begd ayde to heale th'apostumes of my sore.

82

I vow'd, if she would pittie my distresse,
(Sith but in her ruth hath no dwelling place)
All Fraunce should wish her endlesse happines,
Sing her good Name, and daily interlace
Her praise with Angels of best worthines.
Nor should excelling wits white paper grace
VVith speaking lines, if those lines doe not speake,
ELIZAS honour, strengthening vs, growne weake.

83

ELIZA, which her Nation doth adorne
VVith all the bridall-garments of the best,
VVithin whose Clime, the Muses high are borne,
Arts in esteeme, most honorably blest;
VVhere Error, like a Furie, liues forlorne,
Consum'd, and banisht from conceite of rest,
That all those Kings admire beyond the flood,
So small an Ile can hold so great a good,

DEVORAX.

Justices A
15

84

I hop'd, by her assist, this fourth *Henric*
Which I oppose against these wicked ones,
Should in reuenge for their impietic
Raine sharpe destruction, and vpon their bones,
Heape Mountaines of tormenting agonie,
To quittance my most vnderferued grones:
And for they made my cheekes vniustly take
The shamefull blush they neuer can forsake.

85

I told her; that the power which giues her power,
(The most almighty Maister of her thought)
Would from his throne, thunder & lightning shower,
Till all my foes to hated dust were brought:
Furies I knew from nights black-shades would scower,
And haunt their bosomes, making them distraught,
Rage and consume the pleasure of their liues,
Hating them selues, their children, and their wiues.

86

Onely her Name, (the terror of her foes)
Must patronize the actions of the iust:
A Knight of hers, that other Knights out-goes,
Must leade the legions of mine onely trust;
For Fraunce growne weake, failes in her owne dispose,
The purest minds are canker-eate with rust:
Lady I cry'd, ayde my distressed plight,
Oft didst thou helpe; yet nere a better right.

E 3

Heere

D E V O R A X.

87

Heere ceast my sute, and with a pitteous voyce,
Of falling teares I murmurd hidden woe,
(Dumb plaints in feeling harts makes greatest noyse)
VVhen least I spake, most was my sorrowes shoe,
Liberall-tongu'd care, is care which doth reioyce,
For vent of greefe, eases the ouer-floe:
And when I nothing sayd, then did I finde
Sorrow most eloquent; reieefe most kinde.

88

For instantly with bowing of her head,
VVhich signe makes all knees bend before her chaire,
She testifi'd, preuailing teares were shed;
For prooffe whereof, her melting hart did reare
A holy dew into her soueraigne head,
VVhich thence from her cleare eye-light did appeare:
And though she for her selfe no sorrow knew,
Yet did she weepe, to heare how others rue.

89

Then with her hand *ELIZA* lifts me vp,
Cheeres my poore soule, repaires my ruin'd mind,
Makes me drinke comfort from the flowing cup
Of her most sacred breath; then doth she bind
My feares to exile, which till then did sup
The iuyce of my wast life, consum'd and pin'd:
And tels me; she'll pertake of my distresse,
Making it nothing, or then nothing, leise.

VVhich

90

VWhich to archiue, shee bids mee there select
 A princely Champion, fortunate and strong,
 One whom my thoughts assures mee will effect
 As great delignes, and right as worthie wrong.
 Many there were, that many would elect,
 Not one vnworthie person in the throng:
 But in my choice, I was deliberate,
 For rash respect repents when tis too late.

91

On euery person ceaz'd my ravisht sight,
 Contemplating the beautie of theyr frames,
 That Prince, mee thought, was finely shapt, vpight,
 Such as was *Marops* at th' Olympick games:
 Another, seem'd broad set, yet passing light,
 Like wild *Hypolitus*, eschewing shames;
 Thys was like *Ajax*, that like *Hector* was,
 All did exceede, the meanest did surpasse.

92

Thys vniuersall excellence set out
 (As if Perfection knew no other soyle)
 Astonisht mee, for all alike borne stout,
 How could I choose, but reason would recoyle
 Blame to my choyce? Since who doth from a rout
 Cull forth a principall, leaues for a foyle
 Th'vnchosen rest, when all I dyd behold
 VVere Jewels-like, of one waight, and one gold.

But

DEVORAX.

93

But ô, the eye that neuer apprehends
The truth of objects by a slight suruay,
VVith grauer iudgement bulily extends
His nimble sight, and what it doth suruay,
Notes not alone, but whereat others tends,
And in whose eyes all other eye-sights lay:
And then I might behold one Prince alone,
Vpon whose beautie all mens eyes were throwne.

94

Higher then others his cleare count'nance floode,
For he was taller much, more straight, more strong,
Like to the Forrests-King boue vnder wood,
Or like an Ensigne in a battailes throng;
His eye, like that which guides men in the flood,
Had all eyes fixt on it which went not wrong:
Euen in his lookes, Nature me thought had layd
Some excellence too rare for men too read.

95

Yet not so misticall, but blindest sights
Might prophecie, if his dread Soueraigne would,
(To whom is due the honour of his sights)
The world from her should all their glories hold.
And those which yet denie our Sauours rights,
By him for her subdu'd, thence be intold:
Amongst conuerted Saints; Lady beware,
This power thou hast, and this is holy warre.

Me

96

Mee thought hee was not fashond in the mould
 Of common men; th'accustomd worke of Nature:
 Nor in the worlds first models, (now growne ould)
 But, as it seem'd by his externall feature,
 Surpassing her great selfe, Nature grew bould,
 And made him of some speciall temprature:
 Then growne in loue with what her power could
 Obtraynd a spirit worthy of the same. (frame,

97

Essex, twas thee I meane, thou didst surprize
 All my desires to seeke my helpe by thee,
 My sad petition-making teares suffice,
 Thy soueraigne Goddesse did accord to mee:
 The brute whereof no sooner could arise,
 But all that euer were, or hop'd to bee
 Great in the world, with Eagles speedie flight
 Flew vnto thee, and offerd vp theyr might.

98

My state, which vntill then hunge doubtfull strange,
 And wounded gouernment past all recure,
 From whom all hope of helpe farre of did range,
 Of nothing but of crosse infortunes sure,
 (Now in a moment see a suddaine change)
 VVhē thou wert known mine ayde; could thē indure
 No more such thoughts of feare; infants could tell,
 VVhere ere thou went, there would best fortune dwell.

F.

You

DEVORAX.

99

You memorable worthy Gentlemen
That in these great occurrents tryde your chaunce,
For whose deere sakes we hold all Englishmen
In reuerent regard, and will aduaunce
Your sapes before all other Noble-men,
VWhilst Fraunce hath powre to holde the name of
If your peculier names I not reueale, Fraunce.
Blame want of knowledge: not my want of zeale.

100

<p><i>Sir Roger Williams.</i> <i>Sir Conyers Clyfford.</i> <i>Sir Mathew Morgan.</i> <i>Sir Edward Brooke.</i></p>	<p>Forgiue mee, thou right habit of the warrs, Resolved <i>Williams</i>, all too soone dissolu'd, VWhich rayd thine honour from thy Countries iars. Forgiue me <i>Clyfford</i>, sith I haue reuolu'd Of thy well purchast glory by thy scars, And yet conceale it: you deere rest resolu'd, <i>Morgan</i> and <i>Brooke</i>, pardon my sparing song, Least poore in praise, I proue too rich in wrong.</p>
--	--

101

Gallant men say, (and lesse you will not say)
That he which leades a world of hands to fight,
Them to a world of blowes ought to conuay:
So he that many fames in praise would dight
To many rare conceits, must runne astray,
And garnish each one with a seuerall light:
But sith I want that wittie treasures store,
One two, two one Ile write of, and no more.

A

102

A spacious field are they for royall braines
 To runne cariers in : th'ayre of them is great,
 VVherein high-soaring thoughts may hold remainses,
 And try their towring Sarcells if they'le seate
 Theyr slie-inchaunting notes, about the beames
 Of other sunnes, and like Times teeth, out-eate
 Fore-going memory ; bewitching Fame,
 To sing of theirs, and of no other name.

103

* *Essex* to thee, (who then was part of thee)
 In this great busines was thy brother ioyn'd,
 Hadst thou had more but him, then should he be
 Thy best, thy dearest ; but since vnconioynd,
 Since all were worthlesse of such fame, but hee,
 VVhere thy name is, there let his name reioynd,
 Be euer chaynd in Fames best lyncks of gold,
 Borne of one minde, created of one mold.

104

And now I come to thee most blessed Saint,
 Thou sweetest Nightingall in th'heau'nly quire,
 Noble-borne *Walter Deuorax*, I faint
 And tremble, least my new inkindled fire
 Mount thee not hie enough ; yet shal't acquaint
 All the worlds eares how much I doe desire.
 O heau'nly soule, thinke not I doe thee wrong,
 Intending thy prayse first, to stay so long.

F 2

It

DEVORAX.

105

It was but that I might discharge my minde
Of all those thoughts which could create delight,
And then bequeathing them vnto the wind,
Sit with my selfe, and nothing else indight
Saue those rare goods, Nature and Rule did bind
VVithin thy bosome; and how VVarrs despight
Bryb'd Death to banish them; making the earth
Poore by thy losse, that was rich by thy birth.

106

I did but as the Syrens of this age,
VVho winning eares to hang vpon theyr speech,
First to delight, lay their conceits in gadge,
(Delight, at which all Naturatts doe reach)
Then, hauing wonne them, that sweet vaine allwadge,
And with graue matter make a feeling breach:
So, if I did reliques of glory shoe,
Twas but a baite to draw men to true woe.

107

And now to Combats and *Monomachies*,
Set battails, sieges, tourneys, dyre euents,
My harsh Muse doth bequeath her harmonies,
Of Citties gyrt, sad murthers, pitching Tents;
Of fires, and swords, and famines cruelties,
Valors true edge, and Angers hardiments,
My soule turnd to a pen, in bleeding lines,
Figures to life true Vertues true designs

DEVORAX

19

108

* O thou Almighty-power which didst infuse
Spirit into my spirit, to dare to doe
Thys act of memorie, (which they refuse
VVhom both desert and worth haue call'd thereto)
Breathe endlesse life into my fainting Muse,
That I may write, and by my writing wooe
Saints to displeasure, when ingratefull men
Suffers thee sleepe so long in darknes den.

M. Wal-
ter Deu-
rax.

109

No sooner had *ELIZA* giuen leaue
To princely *Essex*, *Deuorax* and theyr powre,
To helpe th'opprest, and from theyr backs to heaue
Tyrannies burden, which doth states deuoure;
VVhen easeful thoughts VVarrs summons did receaue,
And gaue adiew to Loues fantastick houre,
Then euery one prepard themselues to sea,
Prayd for fayre gales, and for a prosp'rous day.

110

A North-west winde then gently did beget
Their swelling sayles with child of Honors course:
Theyr steele-shod keeles, the rough-seas entrails slit,
And vnto Fraunce conuay'd faire *Englands* force.
And then disburdning them, on land did set
Rebells dismay; iust scourges of theyr worse:
And though their powers and Ensignes dreadful shoes,
Yet bred theyr Names most terror in their foes.

F 3

But

DEVORAX.

111

But to their Bead-men, whose continuall prayers,
Flew into heauen from theyr breathing harts,
VVhose wishes, in *Jehouas* eyes appeares,
To them, and to the torrents of their smarts,
They brought delirious Balme, and newly reares
Their downe-fallne broken hopes: such happy parts
Playes Vertues sight, and such delight we haue,
VVhen we behold Reuenge we most doe craue.

112

* *Reuenge*, the infant of a fierie minde,
VVhich euer-more succeedes a noble thought,
The foode whereon resolues doe feede by kind,
Nourishing Honour when its captiue brought;
The *All* from whence we any helpe can find
For our disparagd'd Names, to scandall brought:
For it in blood doth purifie disgrace,
Purging her staines, and making smooth her face.

113

The minde by wrongs is made a male-content,
And clouds her shine in please-lesse melancholie:
Her holy humors are in passions spent,
Till by *Reuenge* shee is set at libertie,
And brauely to her first creation sent;
Euen from *Reuenge* got Iustice libertie.
For tis *Reuenge*, and Satisfaction brings
To iniur'd mindes, and to oppressed things.

The

114

The soule is like a boystrous working sea,
 Swelling in billowes for disdaine of wrongs:
 And tumbling vp and downe from bay to bay,
 Proues great with child of indignations;
 Yet with *Reuenge* is brought to calme alay,
 Disburdend of the paine there-to belongs,
 Her lowers are turnd to bright-fac'd sun-shine braues,
 And faire Content playes gently on her waues.

115

Thys truest Iusticer, this vpright Lord,
 (VVilhed *Reuenge*) the wronged persons hope,
 VVith this deuided Nation doth accord
 So sweetly, and doth lend so large a scope
 Vnto Redresse, that euery breathing word
 The gates of their contentments doth set ope:
 And albe nothing's well, yet for it may,
 They liue content, and make a holy-day.

* There stands a Towne close by the Oceans side,
 VVhose walls are often washed with the flood,
 VVell fenc'd, and full of VVarrs most auncient pride,
 A comon harbour for his neighbours good:
 VVithin whole channell, safe securely ride
 Many tall shyps, that many stormes with-stopd;
 Thither came *Englands* powre, and on that shore
 Landing themselves, made rich sea, now sea pore.

Deepe,

DEVORAX.

117

Deepe, I imagine now how blest thou was
 VVhich hadst the mayden-head of their first sight,
 How did thy with and fortunes come to passe?
 Making thee shine more cleerer by their light
 Then all the Townes in Fraunce. Thou didst surpasse,
 Those auncient Mother-Citties held so bright:
 I doe not meane thy neighbour Citties by,
 For they were stained with blood and periury.

118

But those whose streets were guiltlesse of their ills,
 That made not zeale a cloake for damned deeds,
 VVhose powre could bridle vnrestrained wills:
 Euen these, at that time thou by much exceeds
 As Mountaines doe the little sandie Hills,
 Or well-growne Cedars marish-shaken Reeds,
 Both for they first arrived on thy strand,
 And thou first gau'st them welcome to the Land.

119

Short time with thee (though long with the oppress)
 These worthy Chiefetaines breath'd within thy walls,
 None could perceiue, much lesse say they did rest
 Theyr waking harts-honor from slumber-calls.
 And (then in ease) knowing no worse vnrest,
 Speedy prepares they make for these new bralls:
 And from thee *Deepe* departing, march'd along
 To *Roan*, both too faithlesse, & too strong.

Roan,

DEVORAX.

21

120

Roan, (that falsest'd the holy oath,
She ow'd vnto the lawfull Kings of Fraunce,
That tumults rays'd by her deu'ded troath,
Vpon religions wounds, looking a skaunce)
Shuts her late-opend gates against them both,
And voves to haue no Soueraigne but Mischaunce,
VWhich she bought deerely, and more deerely should,
If Valour might haue done, what Valour would.

*Roan be-
st'd.*

121

Roan, me thinks I see thy palie face,
Thy Towers ready ere their time to fall;
Me thinks I see thy Sonnes runne in each place
Madly afrighted, and for succours call,
Thy guiltie conscience blaming thy disgrace:
And from the loope-holes of thy ruind wall,
How many teare-fild eyes stood gazing round,
VVishing them selues away, or vnder ground.

122

O *Villiers*, thou thy selfe, (though then in thee
VVas worthy courage; much to ill apply'd)
VVept in thy soule, that thou perforce must be
A Chiefetaine ouer sinne, and oft hadst try'd
To welcome peace, and shun calamitie,
But that these arguments made thee abide:
Feare of the misreporting multitude,
And fame to warre, against best fortitude.

*Villiers,
Gouernment
of Roan.*

G.

These

DEVORAX.

123

These were the chaynes that bound thee to defame,
And blinded thee from seeing what was best:
This Siren our *Opinion*, wind-borne lame,
Seeking to ease vs, brings vs to vnrest;
This, shunning-shame, brought thee to greater shame,
Thou couldst not harbour a more thanklesse guest,
For it adiudgeth nothing it doth see,
By what it is, but what it seemes to bee.

124

So helpe me truth, as I doe truly thinke,
Opinion, th'onely torture of our minde,
Alas that any thing so vaine should sinke,
VVith muddy barbarisme, vnrefinde,
Into our harts deepe cloffets, and there linke
All our beliefes to him, whose auntient kinde
Is to deceiue vs, promising the rest,
VVhich neuer was, or ere shall be posselt.

125

The many Prodigies were houely borne,
From the distempred womb of thine amaze,
Thy Countries beauty by thine owne hands torne,
Thy dignities, which thy defaults did raze,
Thy guilty faintnes, thy obprobrious scorne,
The golden Crowne on which thine eyes did gaze,
Might haue been Oratours, for they could tell,
Thou didst all ill, in doing nothing well.

And

126

And you, which were his sinewes, and his force,
 The fatall hands to this ill plotting head;
 You, that made nothing better, all things worse,
 You are not blamelesse, you must I obrayd,
 As petty springs from whose polluted source,
 This streame became a Deludge. Be it sayd,
 Vnder controle; this doubt doth still remaine,
 VWhether was worse, the Leaders, or the traine.

127

But howsoeuer, euer this is true,
 You both repented what you vndertooke,
 Thorough your eyes into your bosomes flew
 VVounds vnrecurable: oft in your looke
 VVhen paynted smiles lay publique in our view,
 VVe might behold how much your ioyes forsooke,
 Your vndisguised harts; for they sayd still,
 The waking heauens will plague the sleeping ill.

128

Euen as cold Hemblock numbs the vitall sence,
 Oriuyce of Mandrakes ouer-comes the brayne,
 Euen so your feare, wedded to your offence,
 Inforcst a trembling thorow euery vayne:
 Nought but mistrust kept farall residence
 VVithin your breasts, the state-houses of payne.
 And after you beheld the English bands,
 Scarfe could you hold your weapons in your hands.

G 2

But

DEVORAX.

129

But yet deere Countermen, mistake me not,
(Deere I may call you, since by liues more deare,
Our peace, and your contentment was begot)
I doe not meane this while a dastard feare:
Far from the bounds of Fraunce hath been such blot,
But a taynt soule, seeing those Princes there,
VVho hated to vnsheath their swords in fight
If not for lawfull Kings, and Gods pure right.

130

This was th'afflicting corsue of your harts,
And howerly renouator of your ills,
This drew all your hard chaunces from defarts,
Yet made no lesse the mischeeues of your wills;
VVhy doe I seeke to colour your foule parts,
That knowing truth, no part of truth fulfills?
Therefore ile say as your deeds witnest then,
You were, what you were borne, most sinfull men.

131

By this time warre on both sides was prepar'd,
And Furie like a strumpet runnes about,
First th'one, and then the others minde she squar'd,
And casts her venome ouer euery rout;
Scorne vpon scornes, and dares at them which dar'd,
VVere banded first within, and then without,
Combats were challeng'd, tane, and then put off,
Cuiſes were repay'd with cuffes, & scoffe with scoffe.

As

132

As oft as day beheld them, and as long
 VVere fallies made, beate back, and new inforest,
 Night, Nurse of ease, to whom calme rests belong,
 Saw there no closed eye, VVarres waking worst,
 Made night, as day, in vprores fatall strong:
 VVhat in the day by counsaile was discourst,
 The night did execute; what in the night,
 VVas in the day effected by his light.

133

And thus this waighly busines, busie kept
 Suruiuing great ones, and their following trayne,
 None slumberd, but such as eternall slept,
 Their soules sent hence to ioyes, or endlesse payne,
 And of their names an endlesse count was swept,
 Into forgetfull *Lethe*, where they rayne
 Secure from scandall on the liuing hurld,
 Lost from mens thoughts, forgotten of the world.

134

In all the conflicts, battailes, turnaments,
 And dreadfull clamors of affrighting Armes.
 O *VValter Deuorax*, thy soules blandishments,
 (Not guilt, but gilding Honours choyce alar'mes)
 VVere to all spyrits sprightly presidents,
 As far as *Neptune* flowes, or *Phæbus* warmes:
 Thy Prowesse shall extend that in VVarres fire
 Didst euer first assaile, and last retire.

G 3

There

D E V O R A X.

135

There neuer fled before the Tygers face
 Poore Lamb so fast (ore-taken in his game)
 As French-men fled from thee with winged pace,
 After they had approu'd thy vertues flame.
 Like fire and water, pent vp in one place
 VVith thunder-renting all the heavenly frame,
 Such were thy deeds: and more by much then so,
 If more could be, or more from man could goe.

136

Euen as the fearefull Lenorix in the wood,
 Viewing the dreadfull Lyon full of rage,
 Murther his dame, and feede vpon her blood,
 Renting her limbs, his rigour to asswage:
 VVith silent pace, and trembling in her moode,
 Flies from the rancour of the beasts out-rage,
 And euery step bethinks of what was done,
 And euery houre adreads to be vndone.

137

So did the troopes where starre-eyed *Deu'rax* went
 VVith fearefull admiration see his ire,
 One to another was a President
 To seeke their scapes by some more safe retire;
 And yet their flights was no true banishment
 Of their dispayres: for still his Valors fire,
 Shin'd in their harts, and though he was not nye,
 Yet Furie-like his deeds were in their eye.

But

DEVORAX.

24

138

But what was it (ô perfit man) which thus
Got powre in thy deere thoughts, and hal'd thee on,
To teare from Dangers gates the dangerous,
Exposing still thy person oft alone,
In spight of hazard most miraculous?
VVast *Honours* loue, hard gotten, and soone gone?
VVas't *Ennie*? or was't neyther which thee led,
Twas both, twas both, an *Ennie* nobly bred.

139

O Souldiers-*Ennie*, neere alie to Kings,
Maiestick humor, carefull ielialous thought,
Thou, which awak'st vs from ignoble things,
A passion neereft to a God-head brought,
Onely indefinite; to whom none brings,
Limit or bound: thou greater then our thought,
VVho holds thee, holds a power to make him able,
VVho looses thee, becomes most miserable.

Gustavus A. Deligne

140

And yet forgiue me (fayre one) twas not this,
VVas neuer any thing how good so ere,
VVhich hath so rough a name as *Ennie* is,
That could liue in thy hart: for Angels there,
Keepe solemne reuels, and by power dismisfe,
The earthie passions which our natures beare:
VVithout thee, well might humaine rarenes rest,
But holy things liued onely in thy brest.

Vpon

DEVORAX.

141

Vpon thy helme, sat Conquest ready drest,
Delighting to behold thy sacred deeds,
And swore that Temple made her onely blest,
For by thine acts, her actions prayse exceeds.
Thou not her fayre, but she thy fayre posscest,
Thy looks the tables whereon honour reeds
Instructions for her laude, inchaunted all,
And like thy sword, made best resolved fall.

142

That Engine of defence and punishment,
VVhich well could chastice, who could well doe ill,
VVith thee was but a needlesse instrument,
Nature had giuen thee darts could better kill;
Thy hart-inchaunting looks, had they been bent,
In bitter frownes, or shewd displeased will:
The strength of strengths, had humbly false before thee
So much thy beauty made the world adore thee.

143

If *Hercules* by *Hylas* was subdued,
And chaynd in golden fetters to his loue,
And if *Patrocles* held in seruitude,
Stix-washt *Achilles*: then I will approue,
And in thy powre, all powre, all loue include:
Making thy fame sit starres, and heauen aboue.
For thou hast courage greater then the one,
And beauty more then in the other shone.

Neuer

144

Thy cheekes were Lilly-fields where Roses grew,
 Thine eyes two Lamps, which lent the day his light,
 Thy breath the ayre in which choyce pleasures flew,
 Perfuming all things neere vnto thy sight;
 Thy dangling tresses (hanging in our view,)
 Thē *Phæbus* sounding strings were much more bright.
 Thy lips, which kisse each other when they meete,
 Taught them to kisse, which thought no kisses sweet.

145

Loue in thy lookes hung forth a conquering signe,
 Sharpning his arrowes on thy daintie brow,
 I saw him light his Torches at thine eyne.
 Oft haue I heard him for thy sake a-vow
 Hee would no more mongst men be held diuine,
 But for thy fauour his great tytles bow
 To doe thee seruice, and become thy Squire,
 Begging no more but count'naunce for his hire.

146

VVhat wonder is it then if mortall bred
 Fell at thy feete? when such a sacred powre,
 VVho at the tables of the Gods hath fed,
 Hee which hath made *Ioue* tremble at his lowre,
 Stoope vassaile-like, and humbleth his proud head,
 Begging the pleasures of a happy howre.
 O great insearchable, almightie Fate,
 Thys was your will, and you thus form'd his state.

H.

Euen

DEVORAX.

147

Euen you sad Daughters of the quiet night,
 VWhich in your priuate revolutions write
 VWhat hath, or shall vpon our fortunes light,
 VWhose Stories none may see, much lesse recite.
 You Rulers of the Gods; twas you gaue might,
 That our great Grandam *Nature* should vnite
Effect and All her best treasures in those princely two,
Demonstr. That after-age might say: Thus could shee doe.

148

Nature, in which Diuinitie doth shine,
 Liuely presenting vnborne Dietie,
 Is that same Spirit of Reason, most diuine,
 VWhich causeth every naturall worke to be.
 All things shee doth preserue, and can refine
 Muddy pollutions from impuritie.
 Philosophie can teach no Art nor ground
 VWhich *Nature* (elder borne) had first not found.

149

Nature, th'effect of *Order*, or the same,
 VVas neuer knowne so rich, so prodigall,
 As when shee tooke in hand the blessed frame
 Of this most famous worke; this Generall,
 Delight of those that doe behold the same.
 VWhich to renowne and make more speciall,
 Shee to her-selfe, *Learning* and *Vse* combinds,
 And then all three sleepe sweetly in theyr minds.

This

150

Thys not to be disioyn'd tryumuerate,
 From any minde that will be perfit taught,
 Posselt in them an endlesse-during state,
 By no fraile palsion to distemper brought:
 All what they could, to them they dedicate.
Nature is *Learnings* eyes, *Shée*, *Natures* thought,
Vse, wanting cyther, is imperfect made:
 They without *Vse*, no better then a shade.

151

The finest *Orpheus* toucheth no more strings
 Then the vnskilfull man which nere saw Lute,
 Yet th'one, by *Vse* and *Knowledge*, sweetly brings
 To th'eare delight, th'other harsh repute.
 So *Natures* perfit man, (the best of things)
 Tryes but what fitt'st with *Natures* gyfts will sute,
 Till taught by *Vse* and *Reasons* holy skill,
 Hee brings vnto perfection what hee will.

152

* VVhy on creation liues my Muse thus long?
 All the world knowes they are the best can be,
 Contrary matter must be in my song,
 No life but death, no birth but tragedie.
 In teares, worne pen, write dissolution,
 That accent better fits my melodie.
Devorax, thy death is my desire to frame,
 My prayer; thy Brother will but heare the same.

H 2

But

DEVORAX.

153

But woe alas, this mine vpbayding Muse
VVhich tells mee what thou wert whē thou wert here,
Doth with the memory thereof, infuse
Into th'impou'riht *world*, (which held thee deare)
Matter of endlesse mourning; Horrors newes,
Shewing it selfe how vilde it doth appeare,
VVho seuerd from the glory which it had,
Is now a widdow, wofull, desperat, sad.

154

Looke how the Sea swells brauely in her pride
VVhilst two faire Nauies daunce vpon her streame,
Seeming the starre-set heauens to deride,
But when leane Enuie with her poy'sning beame
Amongst them doth her venomd hate deuide,
Leauing no memory of theirs or them,
Mournes in black-smoaks, in clamors, and in blood,
Saying thee is not, which hath now no good.

155

Or as the gallant Tyltyards kingly drest
VVith royall eyes, and famous Conquerours,
Boasts that no place can be more richly blest,
No, not the Courts of greatest Emperours:
VVhen night appeares, and calls them thence to rest,
VVhich him of all his happy loades deuours,
Becomes vnfaire, subiect to vild abuse,
Seruing for base, and most respectlesse vse.

Such

156

Such was the widdow-world when thou wert gone,
 An honor-loosing sea, in blood adrest,
 A Realme dispeopl'd, a depos'd throne,
 A witherd garland, where no flowers rest,
 A crowne not made of gold, nor rich'd with stone,
 T was altogether vild, wholie opprest.
 But whether doth this sorrow beare my breath?
 I yet should write thy life, anon thy death.

157

* A lingring siege, Calamities best friend,
 The wealthy haruest, gath'ring store of woes,
 The worke where Deaths worke neuer finds an end,
 The purchase got by blood, and lost by blowes,
 Increasing, made the walls of *Roan* bend;
Famine an infant, past his child-hood growes,
 And comd to riper strength, beginneth then,
 Sterne Tyrant-like, to raigne ore feeble men.

158

His gouernment, from exile calls *Dispaire*,
 VVhich straight accuseth *Hope* of periurie,
Affliction, for a witnes doth appeare,
 And adds beside more worse impietie.
Hope seekes to pleade, but no man giues him care:
 Then banisht, hee departs from miserie,
 And taking with him all content of minds,
 Flyes to the Campe, and better welcome finds.

H 3

Sout.

DEVORAX.

159

Souldiorly triumphs giues him entertaine,
 All harts are open set to take him in,
 Like an imperious Prince, through euery vaine
 Hee rides triumphant. VVhat before had bin
 Low brought by VVarre, rises to life againe.
 Those which had thought to end, doe new begin;
 Nothing is held impossible, but this,
 To faile of conquest, which incertaine is.

160

* The new made King, (whose tytle, holy, iust,
 VVas by some Rebels yet debard their streets)
 VVarring in other parts (as needes he must)
 VVith the report of their approches meets,
 VVhich making complete his long-wished trust,
 (Turning feares-gall, to conquests honny-sweets)
 Inspyr'd him with desire to blesse his eyes,
 VVith sight of them from whom his blisse must rise.

161

A speciall day both parties doe propose,
 (And newes thereof by Herralds published)
 In which these two almightie powers dispose,
 Like seu'rall Oceans ioyntly married,
 To meete each other; and in sight of those
 VVhich knew th'ones right, how it was iniured,
 And how the others ayde might saue the weake,
 To knit that loue-knot time should neuer breake.

Dayes

162

Dayes which beget dayes, naturally begot,
 Thys blessed day (worthy some holy Name)
 And brought it purely forth, without one spot,
 Spreading most vniuersally his flame:
 VVhen Fraunce, that had not all old pomp forgot,
 (Though she vsd little since shee was faine lame)
 Now pranks her selfe, like an old widdow-bride,
 And strimes t'out-goe her youths admired pride.

163

England as much, (and by so much the more
 As her long peace taught how she might be braue)
 Adorns hertelfe, and as her birth-day, wore
 VVhat euer curious was, and did ingraue
 Admire in such as saw her: starres before
 Rode twinckling, like heauens spangles on the waue,
 Some marcht behind; but in the mid-poynt went
 Two Sunnes, which made, made one Sunne excellent.

164

In selfe-like order Fraunce directs her state:
 And then, like two great elements conioynd,
 But not propostrous, as distemperate,
 Theyr ioyfull clamors note a blest reioyne:
 This Planner-like coniunction, soone begat
 The sayth which Times exchange shall nere disioyne.
 Thus French with English mixt, they march'd together
Hope scene in both, and sworne to part from neither.

VVhat

DEVORAX:

165

VWhat better Emp'rour can the body hold
Then sacred *Hope*? the element from whence
Vertue is drawne, fresh-looking, neuer old,
Matter most worthy of a strong defence:
It animates young men, and makes them bold,
Arming their harts with holy influence,
It like a scale, in tender thoughts doth presse
The perfect Image of all worthines.

166

This *Hope* is double, and hath double powre,
As beeing mortall, and immortall fram'd,
In th'one thee's mouelesse, certaine euery howre,
In th'other, doubtfull, and incertaine nam'd.
Th'immortall *Hope* raignes in a holy bowre,
In earthie closurs is the mortall tam'd:
And these two contraries, where ere they meete,
Double delight, and make our thoughts more sweet.

167

Hee that hopes least, leaues not to hope at all,
But hopes the most, hoping so little hope,
Augmenting of our hope, makes hope grow small,
And taking from it, giues it greater scope.
The desperat man which in dispaire doth fall,
Hopes by that end ill-fortunes to reuoke.
And to this hope belongs a second part,
VWhich we call *Confidence*, that rules the hart.

This

168

This second part of hope, this *Confidence*,
 VWhich *Tully* calls a vertue that doth guide
 The spyrit to an honest residence,
 VWithout whose ayde no pleasure will abide
 In our world-wearied flesh: This strong defence
 Against our aduerse Fate: now full of pride,
 Perswades the English Legions, that it is
 Impossible their chaunce should runne amisse.

169

O *Hope*, thou Nurse of aged feeblenes,
 Thou common good which bid'st when naught is left,
 Thou best maintaynour of lifes happines,
 Excluding from our harts misfortunes theft:
 How art thou made the cause to wretchednes,
 Of all thy proper nature quite bereft?
 VWhat, canst thou erre? I pasing wondrous well,
 Chieflie, when *Hope* and *Lone* together dwell.

170

You men tormentors, *Hope*, and foolish *Lone*,
 (The last our guide, the first is our consort)
 The one to execute our thoughts doth proue,
 The other of successe giues good report:
 Nothing in minds doth greater mischiefes moue,
 Then where you hold your howerly resort.
 And though to sights you neuer publique bee,
 Yet are you plagues, much worse then eyes can see.

I.

For

DEVORAX.

171

For you are they which feede the mighty minde
VVith sweetest poyson of desired prayse,
You make vs trust for that we shall not finde,
And like the lookes which onely should displease:
For did not loue of dangers inly binde
Our harts to hazard, and the paynted ease
Of our owne hopes, arme all our Spirits breath,
VVe should not seeke, nor gaine vntimely death.

172

Thou euill-good, I would exclaime on thee,
Did thine owne selfe, not others guide thy will,
But being least thine owne, what iniurie
By thee was done, shall liue in others ill.

* The French and English now ioynd faithfullie,
Doe cythers eares, with others glory fill,
And th'aduerse part felt daily by their blowes, (foes,
That though their harts were friends, their fames were

173

One strives to goe more faster then the rest,
Saying, the buis'nes crau'd a winged-pace:
Another, seeing his deere friend opprest,
For lowes sake will depose him of that place.
Thus vnder zeale, by each it is exprest,
To what a crowne of wonder aymes their race:
And what for loue they did; wert truly knowne,
VVould prooue a iealous feare to be out-gone.

This

174

This happy *Emulation* (God of warre)
 VWhich ofttest comes vnconquerd from the field,
 This which makes Monarchies stretch out so farre,
 Not made to faynt, because it cannot yield,
 VVell wot I, would haue made a fatall scarre,
 (Such as all Fraunce would tremble yet to weild)
 If it had gone, whither it would haue flowne.
 But ill he spoyles, which spoyles naught but his owne.

175

O *Pollicy*, scarce knowne in times that's past,
 Or being knowne, yet least of most esteem'd,
 Thy prouidence most worthily shall last,
 And in these latter dayes be better deem'd,
 Because thou sauedst, what Furie might haue wast,
 Though much thou hast done ill, yet this act seem'd
 Better then any; and so much more farre
 As calme-fast Peace, exceeds blood-shedding VVarre.

176

O, hadst thou loued thy neighbour friends as well,
 And taught them how to shun pursuing harmes,
 Then had not I sat sadly in my Cell,
 For woe inuoking words, for eares strong charmes:
 None yet had seene this Tomb, none heard this Bell,
 This paper-noyse, this Epitaph alarmes:
 But best content with rest, vntaskt to write,
 I had admir'd what others could indite.

I 2

But

DEVORAX.

177

But leauing this, no helpe-attayning *Plaine*,
 (Because great Natures worke must still be so)
 My Mute hence-forward shall no more acquaint
 Men with th'imagin'd causes of our woe,
 But euen with feeling plainenes barely paint,
 Our sorrowes day. Saying, twas thus, and so,
 For then are griefes Tones, most best ordered,
 VVhen th'are with plainenes truly vttered.

178

A day was borne, ô would it had not been,
 Or ere it was, I would the generall domb
 VVhich shall dissolue this masse, might haue been scene,
 That then these sorrowes from a timelesse tomb,
 Exhal'd by zeale, made by our passions keene,
 Might still haue lodg'd in an vnsearched womb:
 But sith that cannot be, because it was,
 Report what that dayes ilnes brought to passe.

179

* Vpon this day, this day that follow'd fast,
 Fore-going dayes, full of contagious chaunce,
Mishap, which by degrees did howerly wast
 The force of Rebels, and the blot of Fraunce,
 Right like her selfe, (that long well will not last)
 Vpon good things casts a dispightfull glaunce.
 And to approoue how ill in well would shoue;
 Flies from the bad, and to the good doth goe.

Vnwelcome

DEVORAX.

31

180

Vnwelcome Furie, thou wert ill advis'd,
Hell would become thee better then their Tents:
Could not some vast vnknowne place haue suffis'd
For receptracle to thy vild intents,
But euen where *Honour* was imparadis'd?
Must thou of force goethither? what repents
Can clense thy faults? no teares of thine preuaile,
For they are showres of spight, no streames of zeale.

181

Mishap, ile curse thee with a bitter curse,
(Yet t'will not helpe me: then as good vndone)
Then the most vildest, I will make thee worse,
(VVhy so thou wert before) what shall be done
To make men loathe thee, (common mischieues Nurse)
By thee ile say, the best beame of our sunne,
As much as halfe his light, *Devorax* I meane,
VVas by thy hand vnscene, shamefully slaine.

182

If any then (for all will be displeas'd,
Cheefly those blessed ones which knew him well,
And also those vpon whose eares haue ceas'd,
Rumour of his renowne, Fames loudest bell,
Busie to haue their icalious thoughts appeas'd)
Aske how twas done, and bid my story tell
How he was slaine, then will I thus begin,
And paynt with truth his death, with shame thy sin.

13

I

DEVORAX.

183

I will report in that abortive day
 VVhen thou vncharitably left'st thine owne,
 Those that well knew thee, those that did obey
 Thy lamentable powre: and all alone,
 Disguis'd with Vertues vizard, brought'st decay
 To those that neuer saw thee, or thy throne.
 Thine old acquaintance, by thine absence eas'd,
 Began to smile, which long had been displeas'd.

184

Those minds which had been worthy, had they held
 An awfull reuerence to their lawfull King,
 VVhose hands were good, if they could rightly wield
 Their weapons as they should, or did not bring
 Ypon them guiltlesse blood. Oft times refeld
 And beaten with continuall skirmishing,
 VVhether growne now more strong or desperate,
 I know not; but they'le once more try their fate.

185

Once more they'le tempt theyr fortunes with theyr
 Or make more speed to Deaths vnwelcom Inn: (swords
 Occasion, and the day, fit time affords,
 Debating counsaile holds it meanes to winne;
 Vulgar vnto the mighty still accords,
 And doe their wils, be't lawfull, or a sinne:
 VVherefore the flowers of all the Citties pride,
 VVell armed, in a fayre Batalion ride.

But

DEVORAX.

32

186

But what is it so private can be ment
But VVarres intellegencer, *Rumor* knowes?
And if not for dispight, yet to th'intent
He may be still him selfe, in furie goes:
And vnto what the one side's fully bent,
Maliciously vnto the other shoes;
This now well-prating Parat, tels the ende
VWhereto the Citties issues doe intende.

187

Forth-with (*ô Essex*) thou a counsaile tooke,
Though none could vtter what thou knewst not well,
(For all experience, lodg'd within thy looke)
And there agreed, that force their force should quell,
Like number, gainst like number vndertooke
To bate the pride which now began to swell:
And *Deu'rax*, who was Honours daily guest,
VWould guide them to their fame, or to their rest.

188

VWhat in the heauenly Parlament aboue
Is written by the finger of the first,
Mortals may feele, but neuer can remoue,
For they are subiects to the heauens worst.
Hence came it *Deu'rax*, that no prayres, no loue
Could stay thy forward course, thine youths flame burst
Into impatience, when *Aduise*, thy friend,
Sought to protract the hasting of thine end.

Euen

DEVORAX.

189

Euen as the sunne in all his royaltie
At noone-tide casts his lookes vpon the ground,
And wooes the fruites with eye-cleare Maiestie,
Curing the VVinters vlcerrated wound,
So *Deu'rax* looke, such beames of dignitie
From him vpon the Armie did rebound :
And from his beames all gazers tooke that fire,
VVhich mounting vp, would neuer more retire,

190

VVhen *Hector* wore the purest roabes of warre,
And louer-like would haue no blemish spide,
Courting bright *Glory*, all his hopes deere starre,
Fam'd then to be *Achilles* promis'd bride,
VVas not so rich, nor shin'd his praise so farre
As *Deuorax* did : which in the troope did ride,
Before all others, like the breake of day,
vvhich through nights shadowes makes his burnisht way.

191

I thinke his soule (for oft it happens so)
Like a deere Prophetesse by holy flame
Had a fore-knowledge, or some sacred shoe
Of what should after happen : For this same,
VVhich we call death (the soules release from woe
The worke which brings our blisse to happy frame)
Sildome arests the body, but wee finde
Some notice of it written in our minde.

I know

192

I know his blessed *Genius*, sacred bred,
VVhich in a moment, by her thoughts suruaies
All the celestiall houses, and doth spred
Ouer the earth, and through the vastest Seas;
Thys day, (by some deuiner humor led,)
Doth apprehend the changes of his dayes:
For he was not himselfe, (though euer best)
But stranger, with strange honor, strangely drest.

193

Neuer rode Bride-grome to salute his Bride,
VVith such delight as hee to his vnrest:
All speed was leaden-footed; oft hee cryde,
By dallying time, our hopes will be deprest.
Then straight hee notes how swift the day doth slide,
And feares it will not last till hee be blest.
At length, in all poynts fitted as hee would,
Hee marcheth on, encouraging the bould.

194

Arm'd was he royallie through euery part,
His head except, which had no steellie guard:
Those Angell-lookes, which could enchaunt a hart,
Flint-moulded, or in yron closurs bard,
Nakedly borne, vnpolished by Art,
Like the attracting Sunne, with his beames, snard
The vapours of the warre to flie vnto him,
VVhose mists of death, in touching did vndoe him.

K.

The

DEVORAX.

195

The vapors of the warre, the clowdie smoake,
The mantles to that winged messenger,
VVhich from the Cannons intrailles rudely broke,
Or from a lesser hand deliuerer,
Kills where it comes, woundeth the hardest Oake,
Batters stone walls, and leaues no register
Of any comely worke, thys ayrie deuill,
Became in loue with good, it selfe all euill.

196

VVith him it was in loue, (or fayn'd to be)
For euen as hayle-stones fall vpon the ground,
Or in the Sunne playes little *Attomie*,
Euen so flew bullets, with a musick sound
Of whistling notes, Death charming melodie
About each part of him, yet made no wound;
So that those living, and that dying lay, (play.)
Thought him *VVarre* selfe, with whō *VVarre* seem'd to

197

And well it might be so, if *VVarre*, like men,
Had beene created with a sicklie soule,
Full of our melting passion; I would then
Haue so imagin'd, but because tis foule
And most deformed, (if some mournfull pen,
VVith inck not full so black, did not controule
The rugged iestures of his hatefull face)
I would not thinke him guiltie of such grace.

VVarre

198

VVarre, of one matter made, hath but one thought,
 Barb'rous obduracie, conceiting blood,
 Yet from those vnions infinits are brought,
 But all of one like humor, and one good:
VVarre, simply is but spoyle, till *Vertue* taught
 How it might be refin'd, and vnderstood
 A better thing; reporting twas the Sire
 Of *Honour*, which all mortall men desire.

199

Thys thin-leau'd Gold vpon a Copper linke,
 This *Venice ceres* on an Ethiops face,
 This Di'mond set in Lead, this faire-pau'd sinke,
 Cheats the whole world, and vnder shew of grace,
 Deprives vs of more ioyes then we can thinke:
 This robs vs of the riches wee imbrace.
 Mee thinks, the losses which we find by it,
 Should make men loathe, and vildly spet at it.

200

But fie; thys furie is too vehement,
 (Many dead boughs hang on a soueraigne-tree,)
VVarre, rightly handled, is most excellent,
 And ealie makes impossibilitie:
 It mounts the Alps, and through vast Seas doth rent,
 By it in blood a way to heau'n we see:
 And euen by it, (though long before thy time)
Deu'rax thou didst into the heau'ns clime.

K 2

Looke

DEVORAX.

200

Looke how a gust of winde vpon the flood,
 Comes scouring, and ore-takes the Saylers eye,
 Or as a tempest, renting vp a wood,
 Seemes swifter then the nimblest thought to flie :
 VVith speede as great, or more in likelihood,
 Thys worthy *Deisorax* to the charge doth hie ;
 And as the thunder rents the heauenly frame,
 So teares his Launce the ranks in which hee came.

201

As earths great wealth falls by the Reapers hand,
 So fell his foes by his deuouring sword,
 The Parragons and Minions of that Land,
 Buying theyr prooffe too deerely, doe accord,
 That his renownes preheminance shall stand
 About all former Princes : and afford
 Matter for greater meruaile then hath beene,
 Or had he liu'd, should els-where haue been seene.

202

But what auailles it to say thys hee did,
 VVhen twas but shoues to that he would haue done ?
 VVhat better am I to say thus hee rid ?
 Thus hee triumph'd, thus did his foe-men runne ?
 VVhen what hee was, from present *is*, is hid,
 Remembraunce, by such memorie vndone ;
 VVho knew him, knew hee was the best of any,
 VVho knew him not, may learne by mee and many.

But

204

But loe, the bartaile grew by this time old,
And yet the worst of it was still vnborne,
Many a life was deerely bought and sold,
But now in happy state, and now forlorne:
Contagious changes euery one behold,
The Rebels first, lith vanquisht and ore-borne:
The English next, who hauing slaine their foes,
Came weeping backe, but could not tell their woes.

205

The Fountaine whence these miseries did spring,
(O noble *Devorax*) flow'd from thy great thought,
Thy sacred resolutions towring wing,
A step aboue Fames height intirely sought:
And if to doe enough, were that sweet thing
VVhich thou aspyr'dst to; it was fully wrought:
Thou didst enough, if conquest might content,
And who doth more, is worthy to be shent.

206

But thys false-painted Dietie, call'd *Lande*,
VVhich makes vs thirst for vaine Eternitie,
Twixt our Desires and Hope, a cunning Bawde,
Vshers the soule vnto Extremitie:
And helpt by slie insinuating *Fraude*,
Couers her deeds in scrowles of Pietie;
This hath led others, but it led not thee,
For thou esteem'st no such vaine Imagrie.

K 3

A

DEVORAX.

207

A most religious humor was thy guide,
A feruent zeale to raise vp *Majestie*,
A hate vnto this hell-bred Monster *Pride*,
A loathe thou took'st gainst vp-start *Tyranny*.
Religion, Loue, and Honour sanctifide,
VVith all the other beames of *Pietie*,
Gaue light vnto thy foot-steps, and brought forth
Thy minde to dare to doe these acts of worth.

208

No Idoll-beautie in thy hart was seene
To gouerne what thou vnder-took'st in this,
Thou hadst no Mistres, but thy sou'raigne *Queene*,
And shee, of all mens prayse most worthy is:
Her beames, (I doe confesse) made the beames keene
Of thy best mettald Spirit; what's amisse
That shee makes perfit? what can perfit die,
If first it be not moulded in her eye?

209

Thou liuely worke of her great excellence,
VVel-worthy *Matter* for her powre to frame,
I could attache thee of a high offence,
In beeing too regardlesse, what became
Of thine excelling fortunes; what defence
But was too little to begirt thy Name?
For her works sake, though not thine owne respect,
Thou should'st haue banish'd farre this warrs defect.
But

210

But woe vnto this too late counsayling,
 VVoe that I haue a cause to counsaile thus,
 VVoe of all woes, conscience perpetuall sting,
 Aliue and dead, haunt him that iniur'd vs,
 In curses would I name him, would shame ring
 His name, and hold it meritorious :
 But hell, for more-great mischiefe still doth hide it,
 Because if knowne, no creature would abide it.

211

An vnknowne villaine, for he was vnseene
 The while the skirmish heate continued,
 VVith others, like himselte, (which monsters beene,)
 In a remoted place were ambushed,
 And viewing all the battailes irefull reene,
 And how Fames beautie was imbellished
 In *Deu'rax* deeds; growne enuious of the staine,
 Sent from his peece a bullet through his braine.

212

Most damned wretch, thou hast most vildly done,
 The Musket back recoyling told as much.
 The glasse of Honour now was fully runne,
 VVhat hart but this base dastard-blow will touch ?
 Vngratious engin which eclipsed our Sunne,
 For euer be thou curst : and let all such
 As heare thee, hate thee; let thy stinking breath,
 Be loath'd, and held the sauour of foule Death.

Now

DEVORAX.

213

Now from his hands fell downe the golden raynes,
And gaue the Horse that libertie he sought;
The remnant of his sences, which remaines,
Fled from their Pallace; all to ruine brought.
The blood ranne freshly from his weeping vaines,
His bodies King a heau'nly Empire caught.
But all his vertues, to his brother fled,
And vow'd to liue with him, since hee was dead.

214

Looke how a shole of Rauens for a baite,
Tangle their liues in danger of the snare,
Or starued VVolues, (that wanting what to eate)
Seeing a pray, pursues it without care;
So those, which nothing but theyr deaths awaite,
Seeing the falling of thys noble Starre,
(I meane the Rebels, rest of all defence)
Hazard new deaths to steale the body thence.

215

But they whose harts had long time liu'd therein,
(For twas a little kingdome of theyr loues)
Seeing thys reprobate, and damned sin,
Both for reuenge and honour, stoutlie proues
To beate them backe: so that new fights begin.
The fight of fights, which stones to wonder moues.
One would faine get, the other will not loose,
Both hange in doubt, and can nor will nor choose.

At

216

At last, *Impatience* coniures vp *Resolue*,
 VWhich (like a Spirit rays'd) thundreth about,
 Rents Towers, & trees, and Mountaines doth dissolue;
 Euen so like rag'd the English, when base *Doubt*
 Made question of their chaunce, straight they absolue
 Themselues from feare, then through the damned rout,
 Made thousand seuerall wayes, & by mayne strength,
 (Got where he was) recou'ed him at length.

217

From the sad ground they heau'd his wounded head,
 (VVedded too soone vnto deuouring dust)
 His saddle for a Bere, supplies the stead,
 His Horse his breathing ioy, his valours trust,
 VWhich boare him living, now must beare him dead:
 All things were quite transform'd to what they must,
 As soft as foote could fall, (ô Snail-pacft mones)
 They brought him to his Tent, with sighs, with grones.

218

But when this obieſt in the middle way
 Incounterd with his noble Brothers sight,
 VVhat tears, what vowes, what plaints, what shall I say,
 VVhat euery thing that can but shape the plight
 Of insupportable distresse. O day,
 Blacker then hell, more desolate then night,
 VVhat not to be imagin'd care, didst thou
 View in his face, and reade vpon his brow?

L.

Fraunce,

DEVORAX.

219

Fraunce, thou might' st this day praise the King of Kings,
 VWhich rays'd thee vp a King of thine owne seede,
 VWho like a brooding Henne, vnder his wings
 Nourisht thee kindly, wept to see thee bleede,
 And lost him selfe, to gaine thee quiet things:
 For had thy haps been other-wise, this deede
 Had been thine vtter ruine, and decay,
 Thy *Glories* last knowne houre; and *Shames* first day.

220

O *Roan*, thou ayme-cryer to this woe,
 Be proude, thy fortunes by thy King was blest,
 Else, thou which now art high, had then layne loe,
 As low as leueid plaines by fire deprest:
 VWhat thou wert then, now had been nothing so:
 Infants yet hanging on their Mothers brest,
 Should haue come far thy mem'ries to haue seene,
 But missing thee, not knowne where thou hadst beene.

221

Nor so contented had great *Essex* slayde,
 But brought an other name vnto thy Land,
 Yet better fortune thy worse chaunce alayde,
 He which did lift it vp, now slay'd his hand:
 Had he been for him selfe, not others ayde,
 His strange reuenge by all tongues had been scand,
 And for each drop his Brothers wound did shed,
 A million of French Gallants had layne dead.

Nor

222

Nor came he home wholly vnsatisfide,
 VVitnes thy widdowes yet within thy streete,
 Thy walls, and houses scarce reedifide,
 The Orphants wayling at their Grandams feete,
 Thy Churches vselesse, and vnsanctifide,
 These records with reuenge in part doe meete,
 But greater had it been, and better would,
 If *Might* did what it might, not what it should.

223

France, that wert beautious, ô be comly still,
 Be not a Vassaile, that an Empire was,
 Loue thy dread Lord, be gouern'd by his will,
 Thy ruling of thy selfe brings ill to passe,
 Confound his foes, and thine owne mischiefes kill:
 Be you your selues helpers in your ill case,
 Least your ingritudes doe draw perforce
 From you his loue, on you your neighbours force.

224

And then againe, *Essex* returne againe,
 Yoaking your vntam'd necks, making you bow,
 In whose almighty minde cannot be slaine,
 The mem'rie of his Brother. I auow,
 And heere presage, if euer your disdaine,
 And forget troaths of such sad dayes alow,
 You will accurse your selues, and banne your breath,
 And pray the Mountaynes to bring speedy death.

L 2

But

DEVORAX.

225

But vnto those yet vncreated times,
O Muse bequeath these secret Prophecies,
And let his end draw to an end thy rimes,
Dye with his death, and in his obsequies
Intomb thy soule: thy soule which weary climes,
And falls with faintnes as he seekes to rise;
And seate his numbers in their sweetned eares
VWhere best delights, and best wits fire appears.

226

* Thus *ARETEA* with a heauie looke,
Ending with sighs, what was with teares begunne,
Turnes from my presence: and with woe for-lookke
Further discourse. But I that swift did runne
Vpon *Desires* seete, with reuerence tooke
Hold of her garment, and cry'd, stay deere Sunne,
Thou which hast taken prisoner all my thought,
Ransome my minde, let his release be bought.

227

If thus thou doe depart; from me will part
My rauisht sence; for charritie (faire Saint)
Stay; and as thou hast banqueted my hart,
So glut mine eyes, o holy Mayd, acquaint
My sight (yet drownd with ouer-flow of smart)
VWith those rare miracles which Art doth paint
Vpon his famous Tomb: for twere a shame
Forgetfulnes should sleepe vpon his Name.

Idoe

228

I doe assure my selfe, religious Fraunce,
 VVhich loues the lawes of Hospitalitie,
 VVill not ingratfully forget his chaunce,
 Or for a world forgoe his memorie:
 I know her eyes with tribute-teares doe glaunce
 Daily vpon his Tomb, his valiancie,
 VVhich for her sake brought him to earthly mold,
 Liues writ in Iet, in Marble, Brasse, or gold.

229

Or if twere so that her distempred minde
 Filld with her owne griefe, should forget her friend,
 I know his Countries spirit (most refine)
 And those whom Nature binds to such an end,
 VVill raise a Piramed of some strange kinde,
 Vpon whose Colombs euery wit shall spend
 The fire of his best Muse; that who succeeds,
 Shall beg from him, or weare no witty weeds.

230

* It may be so (the heauenly one replide)
 And feare of that, I feare, keeps him obscure,
 Or else for that experience late hath tride,
 That handy works doe neuer euer dure,
 They are content to let him vnknowne bide,
 Till they may frame the worke more certaine sure.
 Or Time that can dissolue these holy things,
 Hath taught vs now to doe lesse holy things.

L 3

Yet

DEVORAX.

231

Yet least thou shouldst too much complaine, and fret
The world, by telling wherein she offends:
(For what we doe amisse, behind we set,
Few to their faults reprove, with patience tends)
Come, and ile carry thee where *Time* hath set
His Trophies vp, to last when all things ends,
Earth hath them not, nor Sea, nor heere, nor there,
But no where, some where, some where, euery where.

232

* VVith that me thought the power of *Amaze*
Carry'd my *Soule* far from my common sence,
VVonder me thought, with a starre-shyning blaze,
Lighted her to some sacred residence:
Earths eyes were clos'd, onely my minde did gaze,
Much I beheld, yet knew not what, nor whence
Any thing issued: Sight of many things
Confounds the sight, and no true iudgement brings.

233

A world of worlds I saw, yet no worlds there,
Aboundance of delights bathing in teares,
Passion, and stoick dulnes euery where,
Vassalles, and Kings: Kings as no Kings appears,
A thousand hands, a thousand Towers doe reare,
As many moe the walls in sunder teares,
Beauties stood thicker much then spotted stars,
But double moe defects which faces marrs.

VVhen

234

VWhen I saw all things, I saw nothing well,
Millions about me now, but straight-way gone;
I numberd much, and yet could nothing tell,
Infinets when I summ'd them, were but one;
Desirous for to know this heauenly hell,
I saw twas meere *Imagination*,
For by the houely changes it did bring,
I saw it was no euer-during thing.

235

About this great imaginarie round,
This Kingdome of the vnrestrayned thought,
VWhere all things are, which are not to be found,
I made a long large progresse: then she brought
My tyr'd conceits to a more holy ground,
VWhere many curious molds were rarely wrought,
Of all the *VVorthies*, which were nobly bred,
Sleeping secure in *Honours* quiet bed.

236

Not far from them was built a Monument
Of sparkling Di'monds fast bound in with gold,
And round about it for an ornament,
Lawrell I might, and Cipresse Groues behold;
The gates were of the dayes best blandishment,
And euery Piller wrought, seem'd to vphold
A singing Angell, and a weeping Saint;
The strangest mixture *Thought* did euer paint.

This

D E V O R A X.

237

This place delightlesse, had me thought Delight,
And filld his emptines with rare conceite,
This nothing, me thought, all things did dispiht,
And seeme, more rich then the most rich receite
Of *Edens* excellence: there thoughts did wright
Happy content, contented with deceite.
And as me thought I view'd these glorious gates,
I reade these lines written in golden Plates.

THE TOMBE.

*You which desire to ope this dead mans dore,
Or you that passe by it with out regard,
Rest here your eyes, and filling them with gore,
Behold this Tombe of words, and lines prepar'd:
On Marble, let, and lasper, mayst thou po're
Tyll thou poure out thy sight, yet be debar'd
To read the sacred bea'n-out-lyuing scroule,
Which bath the deeds of this almightie soule.*

238

Drawne by the charming Muslicke of these roes,
And guided by the strength of my desire,
I prest into this ayrie house of woes,
Praying the thoughts which made me to aspire:
The lights I saw, seem'd not me thought like thoes
Of earths inuention, they bore-brighter fire,
But looking long, they vanish: then appeare,
Nothing but lines; and these me thought they were.

O thou

THE STATVE.

O thou new Age, appareld with desire,
 To know them whom the liberall powers create,
 Of most heroick spirit is sacred fire,
 Raising their deeds to beavens starre-spotted gate:
 Behold this Empire-meriting young Prince,
 Clos'd with his vertues in this Tombs black shade,
 Who fought for Fraunce, and those which ever since
 Should not for shame see his great glory fade:
 And if a fayre desire thou take to spread
 Through this worlds Theater (which sings his deeds)
 His glorious prayse, and with it raise the dead,
 Name but his name, for it all names exceeds,
 The sound of Dev'rax borne through thousand Lands,
 Eternally on Mem'ries Altar stands.

239

With this last word the lines were vanished,
 And by some sacred hand tane from my sight,
 By that great losse my ioyes were banished,
 For yet my longings were not orderd right,
 This vnscene scene, this tale halfe vttered
 Drive me from ill, into a worser plight:
 Then to my Guide, thinking to make my mone,
 Shee was departed to, I all alone.

M.

Euen

DEVORAX.

240

Euen *ARETEA* was departed thence:
 No signe was left of any thing but woe,
 Mine auncient woe, my thinkings recompence,
Delight, me thought, was chang'd to nothing so.
 Now stood my feete in their old residence,
 Painelessly mouing, taught by *Care* to goe,
 But now in heauen, and now in hell I range,
 So swift our thoughts are, and so apt to change.

241

Vast solitarines bounded my sight,
 (For all is desolate, where not selfe-kinde
 Vnto selfe-kind affords a mutuall right)
 Of spacious trees, of flowres, and fruites I finde,
 Millions of consorts pittying my plight:
 But their dumb eloquence wound more the minde,
 And in their silent listning, seeme to say,
 VVe are *Griefes* hearers, why doth *Griefes* tongue stay?

242

This heauie summons to my wounded hart,
 Awakt the sleeping sparks of my best zeale,
 VWhich mixed with my Countries fatall smart,
 (Both cause, and mourner, of this early peale)
 Compeld me play *Calamities* sad part,
 And strue thy prayse, ô *Dev'rax* to reueale,
Affliction in my bosome long deprest,
 Broke from my lips, and thus flew from my brest.

Alas,

243

¶ Alas, mine eyes that these your falling teares
Should make two Riuers, and yet not erect
Their Funeralls about the mouing spheares,
But sadly on these flowres, with sighs defect
Paint lamentable verses, pittious feares,
The witnesses of thousand *Griefes* respect:
O now exalt these fountaynes of my brayne,
They happy are which for good *Chaunce* complayne.

244

Nor eyes, nor verse, fill'd with this tearie source,
VVhich with pale colours ploughs my furrowed face,
Can vs suffice, till my sad tongues discourse,
Relent obdurate *Pitty*, mourne *Disgrace*,
All paynes, all mortall anguishes, all worse
Then payne or anguish, or the wofulst case
Can be imagin'd; ô what payne haue I
To see againe, a new *Achilles* die?

245

VVoe me, mine eyes, seeke shadowes for your sight,
To sounding Rocks recount your miseries,
The Sunne is not for you, seeke lasting Night,
Long not for Day, place galling agonies,
And fore-knowne mischiefes next thy heauie plight,
Of woes, and wrongs, found new societies,
VVeepe, weepe, poore *Fraunce*, this losse by *Fate* down
Is not alone to thee, but all the world,

(hurld,
Alas

M 2

DEVORAX.

246

* Alas fayre *Nimphs*, you Ladies of cleare springs,
If e;ther loue or pittie (which still dwells
In femall harts) lament those heauie things,
VVhich presse our fortunes downe to many hells,
VVhy doe you let these flow'rs which dumbly sings,
VVeepe ere you weepe, and with tormenting yells,
Sigh long before you. O great powers decline:
Teares shed for Vertues sake, are teares deuine.

247

* You *WWood-Gods*; hence leaue haunting of your
Come weepe with me this lamentable crosse, (Caues,
VVhich fatall Death, (the Emperour of graues)
Hath heapt vpon our dayes; ô bare-bon'd glosse,
Of what we all must be; what nothing saues:
Can there alas then this be surer losse
To see all vertue in a forgotten Tombe?
Of *Fortune* ô ineuitable dombe.

248

* O *Fate*, thou faithlesse measurer of times,
Most vnindifferent Mistris to young yeares,
VVhich haue the purest soules: now note thy crimes,
Tell vs who caus'd thee hasten our dispaire,
Inroling *Den'rax* in these buriall rimes?
VVhy didst thou bandie mischief gainst the spheares,
Taking away what heauen to earth did lend,
And bringing rarest things to quickest end.

In

249

In spight of thee, and Death ; his gentle Name,
His glorious Name vnder his soule shall shine,
It from the skyes shall take the dayes bright flame,
And on the heavenly stage his deeds deuine
Shall sacredly be reade, and by the same
Eternity shall liue, his vertues Mine,
Shall be a rich example vnto Kings :
Tis prayse, not shame to follow vertuous things.

250

* Daughters of *Ioue*, since happy *Memory*
Inroles the deeds, are worthy of record,
In golden letters (lasting Charraëtrie)
Vpon a polliht Marble ; ô accord,
And in that Booke, heauens royall Lybrarie,
VVrite downe his *Prayses* : then that *Prayse* afford,
Limits beyond all earth, or seas proud rage,
Leauing their beames to guide this yron age.

251

* You Sisters of *Apello*, sacred nyne,
Othrough all worlds, within your lyuing Arts,
Beare his renowne, and graue within your shryne
The honour of his great almighty parts,
Let it flye farther much then Sunne can shyne :
For he was euen a Monarke of all harts,
Nor euer did the VVarriours in times past
Attayne more honour then his Time imbract.

M 3

O

DEVORAX.

252

* O tryple crown'd *Diana*, ô great Queene,
Latonas Daughter, Sister to the Sunne,
 Thou *Delphian* Lamp, Lady of euery greene,
 VVith that sad Christall water which doth runne
 From thy celestiaall eyes, sadly be seene,
 Tower this Tomb where *Englands* fame doth wonne.
 Make it a lyuing spring, thinke there remaynes,
 VVhat ere the earth, or rich, or fayre contaynes.

253

VVhat ere on earth is rich, delightfome, fayre,
 Holy, or vertuous, which the rare right hand
 Of that most great, most infinite, most deere,
 Father of all eternitie makes stand
 Vpon this mold, vnder the trypleayre,
 VVhich bounds the boundlesse circute of the Land,
 Vpon his soules-brow thinke thou seest the same,
 The deere Conseruatour of his best Name.

254

¶ *France*, which hath caus'd the losse of all this best,
 Come offer teares and sighs for sacrifice,
 And (though too late) by it know thy vnrest.
 ¶ Goddesse *ELIZA*, Queene of harts and eyes,
 That lost this Name I loue, with it good rest,
 Say *Deu'rax* liue in peace, and t'will suffice:
 I dare not beg a teare; yet *Deu'rax* gone,
 You lost one of the best beames bout your Throne.

And

255

* And you great Lord, greatest of all that's great,
Loosing your Brother whom most worthilie
The earth adores, your breasts fayre Pallace beate;
Deere *Essex* prayse his new Natiuitie.

* You Soueraigne Ladies thron'd in my harts seate,
Northumberland, and *Rich*, for charritie
Ayde his rare prayse, and sweeten my poore rime
VWhich striues to make him conquer *Death* and *Time*.

256

* Lastly, you English people, *Pallas* Squires,
Faithfully wall this Saint-like Tomb about,
And make his vertues grow from your desires,
Report by Valures tongue the world throughout:
That though the *Fates* incenst with enuious fires,
Breake *Natures* thred, and captiuat the stout,
Yet shall his Name, the badge of *Pietie*,
Liue both in heauen, and earth eternallie.

257

And thus arest thy pace poore heauie *Muse*,
Doe thy last seruice, end thy weary tale,
And on this well-built holy Tomb, infuse
The large deriued currents of thy bale;
Say (as to say all holy powers vse)
Glory adue, Honour, and Vertues pale:

* The drowned Meads againe regaine their greene,
VWhat not in him, is in his Brother scene.

FINIS.